The Buchau Housebook

Das Iatromathematische Hausbuch

a medical & astrological calendar of **1443**

University of Pennsylvania · Schoenberg Collection · LJS 463

written and illuminated by

Heinrich Stegmüller of Wiesensteig

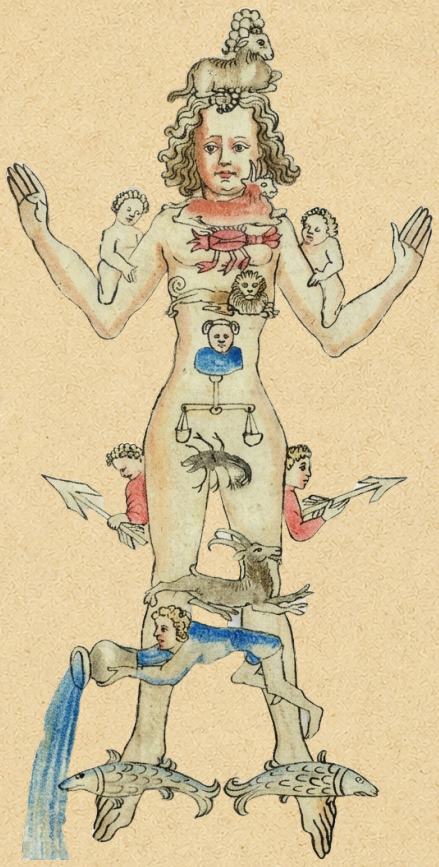
at Buchau, on St Prisca's day, 18 January 1443

transcribed, translated & designed by

Claude & Pavel Mamontov

— a public-domain manuscript, read with the help of artificial intelligence —

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



The Zodiac-Man (Homo signorum) — the twelve signs and the parts of the body they rule (f. 54v).

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

Introduction

This project was undertaken to learn how to read ancient manuscripts and to create a small public library, utilizing artificial intelligence.

The book reproduced here, *LJS 463*, is an *Iatromathematisches Hausbuch* — a household handbook of "medical astrology" written in 1443 at Buchau, near Lake Constance, by the schoolmaster **Heinrich Stegmüller**. It is held in the Schoenberg Collection at the University of Pennsylvania and is in the public domain.

It opens with a calendar for the diocese of Constance — for every month the saints' feasts, the length of day and night, the sign of the sun, a verse spoken by the month, a regimen of health, and two painted roundels (the zodiac sign and the labour of the month). Treatises follow on the twelve signs and the body, the seven planets, the four temperaments, and bloodletting.

Each leaf is given in turn: first the **image** that stands on that page; then the **transcription** in the original Latin and fifteenth-century Alemannic German (red ink in red, uncertain readings marked [?]); then the **translation** into English.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

Editorial Method

This is a **diplomatic** edition. In the German text the manuscript's own spelling and Alemannic dialect forms are kept exactly — *haut* for *hat*, *laussen* for *lassen*, *nauch* for *nach*, *amen* for *einem* — and nothing is silently normalized. In the Latin calendar the saints' names are given in the manuscript's spelling, but the ordinary liturgical suspension-marks are expanded without comment (e.g. *epī* → *episcopi*, *pbrī* → *presbyteri*), as is standard for calendars.

Square brackets carry every editorial act. [word] is a letter or word supplied or expanded by the editor; **[word?]** is a reading that is legible but uncertain; **[…]** marks text that is lost or illegible. Editorial descriptions use one fixed vocabulary: *illegible, uncertain, conjectural, damaged, unresolved, unidentified*. All editorial comment is gathered in the **Editorial Notes** that follow each translation, never mixed into the transcription.

Line numbers count the text-lines printed here, not the manuscript's physical rulings. Prose that runs across the leaf is broken at sense-units for legibility; verse keeps the scribe's own line-division. The red paragraph mark ¶ reproduces the scribe's rubricated *Paragraphzeichen* — it separates the items of counsel within a regimen and the individual remedies in the medical sections.

Because the manuscript is a picture-book whose meaning lies partly in its layout, **each leaf is reproduced in facsimile beside its transcription.** The roundels, the red and blue initials, the columnar calendar apparatus and the marginal glosses are

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

therefore preserved to the eye on the page itself, and are described in words only where it aids the reader.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

Contents

Editorial Method 4

The Calendar 8

- January . . . 8
- February . . . 13
- March . . . 19
- April . . . 24
- May . . . 29
- June . . . 34
- July . . . 39
- August . . . 45
- September . . . 52
- October . . . 58
- November . . . 63
- December . . . 68

The Twelve Signs & The Body 73

The Seven Planets 137

The Four Temperaments 209

Bloodletting, Bathing & Remedies 222

Later Additions 365

Summary & Conclusions 369

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

A Statistical Profile of the Text 372

The Book's History 378

Glossary 379

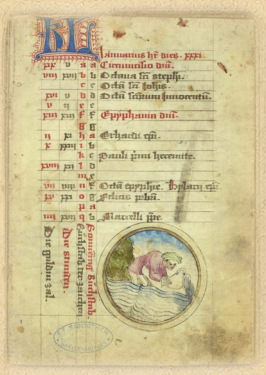
Index of Persons & Places 381

The Monthly Authorities 382

Index of Feasts 384

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

The Calendar
January



folio 1r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

1 **KL · Januarius habet dies xxxi.**

2 *German column-rubrics at lower left:* Sonntag Buchstab

3 Guldin zal der zaichen

4 Der striechen

5 Die guldin zal.

Circumcisio Domini	1
Octava sancti Stephani	2
Octava sancti Johannis	3
Octava sanctorum Innocentum	4
Epyphania Domini	6
Erhardi episcopi	8
Pauli primi heremite	10
Octava Epyphanie · Hylarii episcopi	13
Felicis presbyteri	14
Marcelli pape	16

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

CALENDRICAL APPARATUS

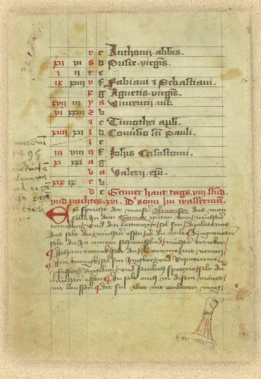
[1] the German column-headings name the calendrical apparatus — "Sunday letter (the dominical letter),

[2] golden number of the signs, the strokes, the golden number."

FEAST-DAYS OF JANUARY

Circumcision of the Lord	1
Octave of St Stephen	2
Octave of St John	3
Octave of the Holy Innocents	4
Epiphany of the Lord	6
Erhard, bishop	8
Paul the First Hermit	10
Octave of Epiphany · Hilary, bishop	13
Felix, priest	14
Marcellus, pope	16

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 1v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Januarius (days 17–31) + January regimen

1 **Genner haut tags viii stund und nachtes xvi.**

2 **Der sonn[e] [stat/louffet?] in Wasserman.**

3 *Regimen prose (red initial E):*

4 Es spricht der maister Almansor:

5 [man] sölle in dem Genner guoten win nüchtern trincken, und in der latwergen sol sin galanga[?].

6 Das solt du nüchtern essen, [als zu] [w]erm[?].

7 ¶ Du solt [an] amen schwaißbad [dich] machen [und] trincken[?].

8 ¶ De[n] ham[?] [r]anck[?] solt du [mit] din[er] arzne[i] mit machen[?].

9 ¶ Din tranck sol sin yngber und reparier[t] pfeffer, [näg]lin[?] und semlich[e] spezerie[n] solt du mit[en?] essen.

10 ¶ Du solt ouch in disem mon[at] nit laussen.

11 ¶ Der sin aber, der mag mit anderen[?] [...].

12 *Later marginal note (lower left, cursive):* **Anno domini 1495** [followed by a faded German obituary note].

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

Anthonii abbatis	17
Prisce virginis	18
Fabiani et Sebastiani	20
Agnetis virginis	21
Vincentii martyris	22
Timothei apostoli	24
Conversio sancti Pauli	25
Johannis Crisostomi	27
Valerii episcopi	29

TRANSLATION

DAY/NIGHT LINE

[1] "January has 8 hours of day and 16 of night.
[2] The sun [stands] in Aquarius."

REGIMEN

[3] *Master Almansor says:* in January one should drink good wine on an empty stomach;
[4] the electuary should contain galingale, to be eaten fasting;
[5] take a sweat-bath;
[6] let your drink be ginger and prepared pepper, [cloves] and such spices;
[7] **do not let blood this month.**

FEAST-DAYS OF JANUARY

Anthony, abbot	17
Prisca, virgin	18
Fabian & Sebastian	20
Agnes, virgin	21
Vincent, martyr	22
Timothy, apostle	24
Conversion of St Paul	25
John Chrysostom	27
Valerius, bishop	29

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 2r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

January verse + labor roundel (feasting)

1 *Genner bin ich genant.*

2 *Trincken und essen ist mir wol bekant.*

3 *[Z]u disem monat ist nit gut*

4 *von dem mensche[n] laussen blut.*

5 *Upper-right cursive gloss:.*

TRANSLATION

VERSE

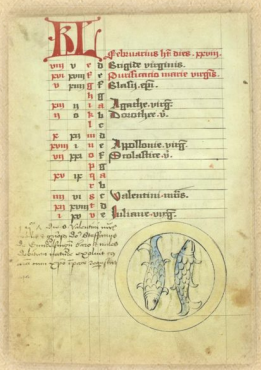
1 "I am called January.

2 / Drinking and eating are well known to me.

3 / In this month it is not good / to let blood from a person."

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

February



folio 2v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

1 **KL · Februarius habet dies xxviii.**

2 Later marginal note (lower left, 6 lines of cursive;

3 Latin obituary, early 16th c.): Obiit anno d[omi]ni […], die

s[ancti] Valentini m[artyris],

4 nobilis et g[e]n[er]osus do[minus] Steffanus de Gundelfingen,

baro et miles;

5 debitum nature exsolvit, et a[n]i[m]a eius cum [Christo]

[semper?] regnat.

6 [The year is illegible;

7 a few words uncertain.]

Brigide virginis	1
Purificatio Marie virginis	2
Blasii episcopi	3
Agathe virginis	5
Dorothee virginis	6
Apollonie virginis	9
Scolastice virginis	10

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

Valentini martyris 14
Iuliane virginis 16

TRANSLATION

MARGINAL OBITUARY

[1] Died, in the year of the Lord […], on St Valentine the Martyr's day (14 February),

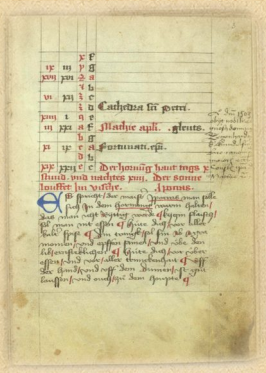
[2] the noble and generous lord **Stephan von Gundelfingen**, baron and knight;

[3] he paid the debt of nature, and his soul reigns [for ever?] with Christ.

FEAST-DAYS OF FEBRUARY

Brigid, virgin	1
Purification of Mary	2
Blaise, bishop	3
Agatha, virgin	5
Dorothy, virgin	6
Apollonia, virgin	9
Scholastica, virgin	10
Valentine, martyr	14
Juliana, virgin	16

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 3r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Februarius (days 17–28) + February regimen

Der hornung haut tags x stund und nachtes xiiii.

Der sonne lauffet in Vische.

¶ [Aplis?]

Regimen prose (blue initial E):

Es spricht der maister Ypocras:

man solle sich in dem Hor[nu]ng warm halten, das man recht t[e]ytlich werde.

¶ Eigem flaisch sol man mit essen.

¶ Hüte dich vor aller kalt[er] spise.

¶ Din trang sol sin ab[er] [zappa?] morgen, und essen amen[?], und übe den lib ernstlich[lich]er.

¶ Hüte dich vor über essen, und vor aller truncken[h]ait.

¶ Off der hand und off den dumen ist gut laussen, und ouch zu dem houpte.

Later marginal note (right margin, cursive;

Latin obituary): Anno d[omi]ni 1503 obiit nobilis et g[e]n[er]osus dom[inus] [Lienhard?] de Gundelfingen,

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

14 baro et miles […] maior[?] […] cons[…].

15 [The given name is uncertain — read here as Lien-/Leonhard, though an earlier reading gave Eberhard;

16 the lower lines are largely illegible.]

Cathedra sancti Petri	22
Mathie apostoli · gleuts [glossed]	24
Fortunati episcopi	26/27

TRANSLATION

DAY/NIGHT LINE

1 "February has 10 hours of day and 14 of night.

2 The sun runs in Pisces."

REGIMEN

3 *Master Hippocrates says:* keep warm in February;

4 eat your own [fresh] meat;

5 **avoid all cold food**;

6 beware overeating and all drunkenness;

7 **it is good to let blood on the hand and the thumb, and also at the head.**

MARGINAL OBITUARY

8 In the year of the Lord **1503** died the noble and generous lord **[Leonhard?] von Gundelfingen**,

9 baron and knight […].

FEAST-DAYS OF FEBRUARY

Chair of St Peter	22
Matthias, apostle	24
Fortunatus, bishop	26/27

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 3v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

February verse + labor roundel (warming / tending the fire)

1 *Hornung bin ich genant, erkenne mich.*

2 *Gaust du barfut, es gruwet dich.*

3 *[Z]u disem monet ist gut laussen.*

4 *Iß und trincke ze maussen.*

5 *Upper-right cursive gloss:* Die füsse[n] mag[stu] salbe[n] [...] er[wel]che[n],

6 wann du [...] solt die [innern] gelidern [...] gewärmet [...] [Z]ene [...] das [k]ind die [v]allend[e] sucht gewinnet [...].

7 [A health note on warming the limbs, anointing the feet, the teeth, and the "falling sickness".]

TRANSLATION

VERSE

1 "I am called February [Hornung], know me.

2 / If you go barefoot, it chills you.

3 / In this month it is good to let blood.

4 / Eat and drink in moderation."

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

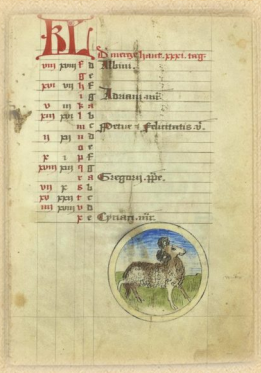
GLOSS

[5] You may anoint the feet […] and warm them, for you should keep the inner limbs warmed […];

[6] [a note follows] on the teeth, and on a child's "falling sickness" (epilepsy).

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

March



folio 4r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

[1] **KL · Der merze haut xxxi tag[e].**

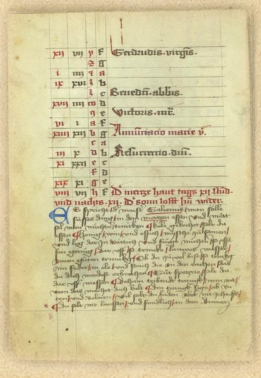
Albini	1
[Per]petue et Felicitatis virginis	7
Gregorii pape	12
Cyriaci martyris	16

TRANSLATION

FEAST-DAYS OF MARCH

Albinus	1
Perpetua & Felicitas, virgin	7
Gregory, pope	12
Cyriacus, martyr	16

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 4v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Mercius (days 17–31) + March regimen

[1] **Der merze haut tags xii [stund] und nachtes xii.**

[2] **Der sonn[e] lofft in Wider.**

[3] *Regimen prose (blue initial E):* Es spricht der maister Galienus:

[4] man sölle … süßes ding in den morgen essen, und mässel[?] man michten trincken.

[5] ¶ [Mit?] honig [und] essig … grü[n] amer[?] und bey [au]ßen [r]autig und feuchte[?] michel spise … ¶ Ob du … ze [Ader] solt, [so] trinck nim feder[zen?] … ¶ Gut spezerie sölt du dar[zu] essen … ¶ Du sölt nit laussen, und sun[der]lich[en] [vor] dem dunner[?] …

Gerdrudis virginis	17
Victoris martyris	20
Benedicti abbatis	21
Annunciacio Marie virginis	25
Resurrectio Domini	27

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

DAY/NIGHT LINE

[1] "March has 12 hours of day and 12 of night.

[2] The sun runs in Aries."

REGIMEN

[3] *Master Galen says:* eat something sweet in the morning;

[4] drink in moderation;

[5] use honey and vinegar;

[6] take good spices;

[7] [counsel on bloodletting] — **do not let blood, especially before the thunder [storm season].**

FEAST-DAYS OF MARCH

Gertrude, virgin	17
Victor, martyr	20
Benedict, abbot	21
Annunciation of Mary	25
Resurrection of the Lord	27

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 5r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

March verse + labor roundel (working the soil)

1 Ich bin gehaissen Merze.

2 Den pflug uff sterze

3 ich hie uff sterze.

4 Su disem monet laußte dehain blut.

5 Doch so ist schwaiß-baden gut.

6 *Upper-right cursive gloss:* Des houptes sol man schonen.

7 ¶ Wand in dem [w]inder ist [es?] … blut laußen [oder] zu adern, aber baden, das ist [g]esund allen gliden.

8 ¶ Die orn … morgen[s] solt du embern.

9 ¶ Du macht [l]ang wol den bart [scheren?].

TRANSLATION

VERSE

1 "I am called March.

2 / I guide the plough … / In this month let no blood.

3 / Yet a sweat-bath is good."

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

GLOSS

4 One should spare the head.

5 ¶ For in winter […] to let blood or open a vein — but [rather] to bathe — is healthful for all the limbs.

6 ¶ The ears you should forgo [caring for] in the morning.

7 ¶ You may well [shave] the beard for a good while.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

April

folio 5v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

[1] **KL · Aprelle haut xxx tage.**

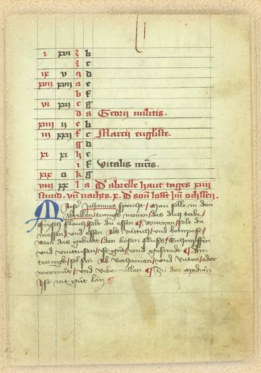
Eustasii confessoris	2
Ambrosii episcopi	4
Marie egiptiace	9
Tyburcii et Valeriani	14

TRANSLATION

FEAST-DAYS OF APRIL

Eustace, confessor	2
Ambrose, bishop	4
Mary of Egypt	9
Tiburtius & Valerian	14

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 6r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Aprilis (days 17–30) + April regimen

1 **Der aprelle haut tages xiiii [stund] und nachts x.**

2 **Der son[ne] lofft in Ochssen.**

3 *Regimen prose (blue initial A):* Als Johannes spricht:

4 man sölle in den … [ab]ellen [Äpfel?] trang nemen … frisch flaisch sölte du essen.

5 ¶ Morgen[s] sölte du mässen und essen … und kompost … wan das geblüet den bösen fluss … ¶ Din trang sol sin … ¶ [Diese Speisen] ist nit gut lang [zu essen].

Georii militis	23
Marci euangeliste	25
Vitalis martyris	28

TRANSLATION

DAY/NIGHT LINE

1 "April has 14 hours of day and 10 of night.

2 The sun runs in Taurus."

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

REGIMEN

[3] *As John says:* eat fresh meat;

[4] eat and drink in moderation;

[5] [eat] preserved fruit (*kompost*);

[6] a note on the blood/humours;

[7] these foods are not good for long.

FEAST-DAYS OF APRIL

George, soldier	23
Mark the Evangelist	25
Vitalis, martyr	28

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 6v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

April verse + labor roundel (pruning / grafting)

1 *Aprelle bin ich genant.*

2 *Su recht zit ich die reben beschnide durch das land.*

3 *Su disem monet nütze dich nit än.*

4 *Laßen zu der median.*

5 *Upper-right cursive gloss:* [Z]ene du mön … ist [es] in dem Stier … so günst[ig] … ¶ Häuser bauen, das ist gut.

6 ¶ [S]amen säen kein nütze tut.

7 ¶ Laß[e] dich [von] Johannes, [dem] arzat, wissen.

8 ¶ Den hals … smit … isen[?].

TRANSLATION

VERSE

1 "I am called April.

2 / In due season I prune the vines through the land.

3 / In this month do not [overstrain] yourself.

4 / Let blood at the median vein."

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

GLOSS

5 [The teeth]:

6 while the [moon] […] is in Taurus […] it is favourable.

7 ¶ Building houses is good.

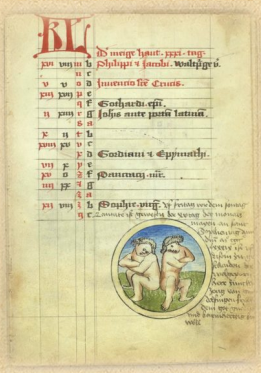
8 ¶ Sowing seed does no good.

9 ¶ Let Johannes the physician advise you.

10 ¶ The neck […] iron[?] […].

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

May



folio 7r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

[1] **KL · Der meige haut xxxi tag[e].**

[2] *Later cursive computus note (right margin):* a chronological/computistical note keyed to **sant Sophien tag** and the Sunday *Letare*, citing a golden number and a year-count ("…fünfthalbhundert jar…" = four-hundred-and-fifty years) and ending in a pious formula.

[3] [Largely a later addition;

[4] several words illegible.]

Philippi et Jacobi · Walt[bur]ge virginis	1
Invencio sancte Crucis	3
Gothardi episcopi	4
Johannis ante portam latinam	6
Gordiani et Epymachi	10
Servatii [episcopi]	12/13
Sophie virginis	15

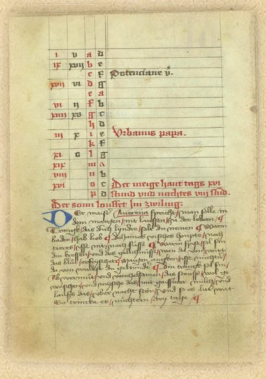
This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

FEAST-DAYS OF MAY

Philip & James · Walburga, virgin	1
the Finding of the Holy Cross	3
Gotthard, bishop	4
John before the Latin Gate	6
Gordian & Epimachus	10
Servatii, bishop	12/13
Sophia, virgin	15

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 7v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Maius (days 17–31) + May regimen

[1] **Der meige haut tags xvi stund und nachtes viii stund.**

[2] **Der sonn[e] louffet in Zwiling.**

[3] *Regimen prose (blue initial D):* Der maist[er] Avicenna sprichet:

[4] man sölle in dem Maigen mit laussen zu der lebern.

[5] ¶ Din tranck als frisch [und] lynder solt du nemen.

[6] ¶ Warm baden hab lieb.

[7] ¶ Dehaines böses haupte[s] … tieres flaisch mit [essen], noch [s]üsses.

[8] ¶ Warm spis sol sin … des geblüets.

[9] ¶ … aus blut, sechs spiegel[?] wäschen … ¶ Du solt din getrang … ¶ Ab waerme … das … wol … wässer und [milch] … mit gaismermilch.

[10] ¶ Laußе dich, oder mach[e] frön[?];

[11] und so es lieb [ist], so trincke es nüchtern dry tag[e].

Potenciane virginis 19

Urbani pape 25

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

DAY/NIGHT LINE

[1] "May has 16 hours of day and 8 of night.

[2] The sun runs in Gemini."

REGIMEN

[3] *Master Avicenna says:* let blood (in moderation) at the liver;

[4] take fresh, mild drink;

[5] love warm bathing;

[6] eat warm food;

[7] [take] goat's milk.

FEAST-DAYS OF MAY

Pudentiana, virgin	19
Urban, pope	25

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 8r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

May verse + labor roundel (courtly pleasure / Maying)

1 Hie kome ich, stolze[r] Meige.
2 Mit kluogen bluomen menigveige.
3 Su disem monet der mensch baden sol.
4 Ouch macht du tanzen, springen, und leben wol.
5 *Upper-right cursive gloss:* So du mön … ist [es] in den [Z]wifaltigen … so ist [es] gut an den armen laussen,
6 … in den henden.
7 ¶ … nit erwarmen …

TRANSLATION

VERSE

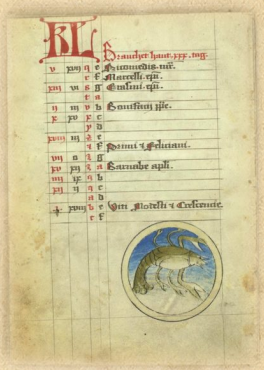
1 "Here I come, proud May, / with many fair blossoms.
2 / In this month a person should bathe;
3 / also you may dance, leap, and live well."

GLOSS

4 When the [moon] […] is in Gemini […], then it is good to let blood at the arms [and hands].

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

June



folio 8v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

[1] **KL · Brauchet haut xxx tag[e].**

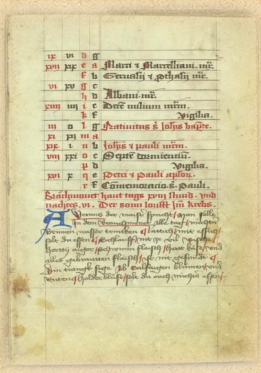
Nicomedis martyris	1
Marcelli episcopi	2
Erasmi episcopi	3
Bonifacii episcopi	5
Primi et Feliciani	9
Barnabe apostoli	11
Viti, Modesti et Crescencie	15

TRANSLATION

FEAST-DAYS OF JUNE

Nicomedes, martyr	1
Marcellus, bishop	2
Erasmus, bishop	3
Boniface, bishop	5
Primus & Felician	9
Barnabas, apostle	11
Vitus, Modestus & Crescentia	15

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 9r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Junius (days 17–30) + June regimen

1 **Brachmonet haut tags xviii stund und nachtes vi.**

2 **Der sonn[e] loufft in Krebs.**

3 *Regimen prose (blue initial A):* Averrois der maist[er] sprichet:

4 man sölle in dem Brachmonet alle tag[e] michten frischen wasser trincken.

5 ¶ Lattich … solt du essen.

6 ¶ Schlauf mit ze[r] wil[en] … ¶ Hettig … gewinnt fluss;

7 hart kaß und alles gebratens flaisch ist nit gesund.

8 ¶ Din trang[k] sol sin … ¶ Salbeyen-blumen und ruten [und] holder-blüt solt du ouch michten essen.

Marci et Marcelliani martyris	18
Geruasii et Prothasii martyris	19
Albani martyris	22
Dies … / **Vigilia**	23
Natiuitas sancti Johannis baptiste	24
Johannis et Pauli martyris	26
Septem dormiencium	27
Vigilia	28

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

Petri et Pauli apostolorum	29
Commemoracio sancti Pauli	30

TRANSLATION

DAY/NIGHT LINE

[1] "June has 18 hours of day and 6 of night.

[2] The sun runs in Cancer."

REGIMEN

[3] *Master Averroes says:* drink fresh water every day on an empty stomach;

[4] eat lettuce;

[5] **avoid hard cheese and all roast meat**;

[6] use sage-flowers, rue and elder-blossom.

FEAST-DAYS OF JUNE

Mark & Marcellian, martyr	18
Gervase & Protase, martyr	19
Alban, martyr	22
Day of … / Vigil	23
Nativity of St John the Baptist	24
John & Paul, martyr	26
the Seven Sleepers	27
Vigil	28
Peter & Paul, apostles	29
Commemoration of St Paul	30

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 9v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

June verse + labor roundel (mowing hay)

1 *Brachmonet bin ich genant.*

2 *Höwen und karst nim ich in die hand[t].*

3 *Su disem monet sol nieman lan.*

4 *Doch sol nieman müßig gän.*

5 *Upper-right cursive gloss:* In dem Krebs laussen ist [un]gesunde.

6 ¶ … zu der lebern … und der brust … trang[k] nemen, das ist gut.

7 ¶ … behüt[e] …

TRANSLATION

VERSE

1 "I am called June.

2 / I take scythe and hoe in hand.

3 / In this month let no one be bled.

4 / Yet let no one be idle."

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

GLOSS

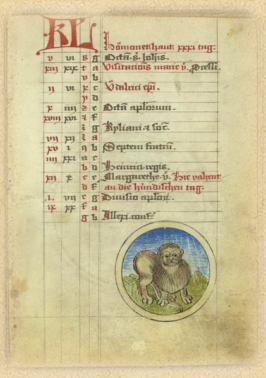
5 Bloodletting while the sun is in Cancer is unhealthy.

6 ¶ […counsel touching] the liver […] and the chest […];

7 take a drink […].

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

July



folio 10r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

[1] **KL · Höwmonet haut xxxi tag[e].**

[2]]elli[?] |

Octava sancti Johannis	1
Udalrici episcopi	4
Octava apostolorum	6
Kyliani et sociorum	8
Septem fratrum	10
Henrici regis	13
Margarethe virginis · *Hie vahent an die hundischen tag*	15
Diuisio apostolorum	15
Allexii confessoris	17

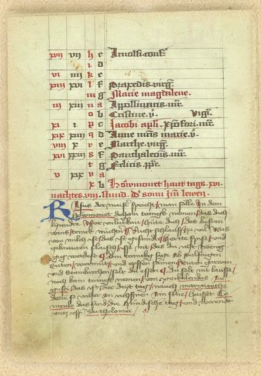
This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

FEAST-DAYS OF JULY

Octave of St John	1
Ulrich, bishop	4
Octave of the Apostles	6
Kilian and companions	8
the Seven Brothers	10
Henry, king	13
Margaret, virgin	15
the Division of the Apostles	15
Alexius, confessor	17

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 10v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Julius (days 17–31) + July regimen

1 **Höwmonet haut tags xvi und nachtes viii stund.**

2 **Der sonn[e] in Lewen.**

3 *Regimen prose (blue initial R):* Als der maist[er] sprichet:

4 man sölle in dem Höwmonat dehain tranck nemen, das dü hytziger wer … ¶ Hüte dich vor laster.

5 ¶ … was von milch ist [meiden].

6 ¶ Du sölt nit … gebratens flaisch … essen.

7 ¶ Din tranck sye [von] salbeyen, ruten … und essig.

8 ¶ Du solt nit laussen … ¶ … das sind die hundischen tag, und werent [bis] sant Bartholomei.

Arnolfi confessoris	18
Praxedis virginis	21
Marie Magdalene	22
Apollinaris martyris	23
Cristine virginis · Vigilia	24
Jacobi apostoli · Cristofori martyris	25
Anne matris Marie virginis	26
Marthe virginis	29

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

Pantaleonis martyris	30
Felicis pape	31

TRANSLATION

DAY/NIGHT LINE

[1] "July has 16 hours of day and 8 of night.

[2] The sun [is] in Leo."

REGIMEN

[3] take no drink that is too "hot";

[4] avoid milk-foods and roast meat;

[5] drink sage, rue and vinegar;

[6] **do not let blood — these are the "dog-days," which last until St Bartholomew (24 Aug).**

FEAST-DAYS OF JULY

Arnulf, confessor	18
Praxedis, virgin	21
Mary Magdalene	22
Apollinaris, martyr	23
Christina, virgin · Vigil	24
James, apostle · Christopher, martyr	25
Anne, Mother of Mary	26
Martha, virgin	29
Pantaleon, martyr	30
Felix, pope	31

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 11r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

July verse + labor roundel (haymaking)

1 Wer der ochse[n] gerne züher[t] den pflug,
2 ich dem wil gebe[n] höwes genüg.
3 Ouch wil ich mit truwen sagen:
4 Hüte dich vor den hundischen tagen.
5 *Upper-right cursive gloss:* Der Lewe … der lungen und den magen … lit an … ¶ Bist du … gesundet.
6 ¶ Du sölt dehein arzne[i] messen …

TRANSLATION

VERSE

1 "Whoever gladly draws the plough with the ox, / to him I will give hay enough.
2 / Also I will faithfully say:
3 / beware of the dog-days."

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

GLOSS

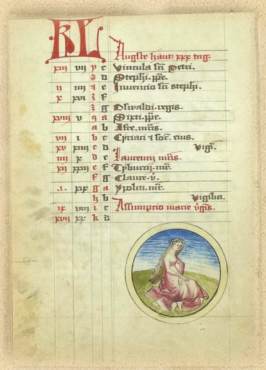
4 The Lion (Leo) […governs] the lungs and the stomach […lies upon…].

5 ¶ If you are […], [you are] healed.

6 ¶ You should [take] no […].

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

August



folio 11v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

[1] **KL · Auglie haut xxxi tag[e].**

Vincula sancti Petri	1
Stephani pape	2
Inuencio sancti Stephani	3
Oswaldi regis	5
Sixti pape	6
Affre martyris	7
Cyriaci et sociorum eius	8
Vigilia	9
Laurentii martyris	10
Tyburcii martyris	11
Clare virginis	12
Ypoliti martyris · Vigilia	13
Assumpcio Marie virginis	15

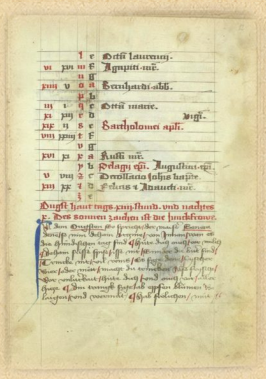
This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

FEAST-DAYS OF AUGUST

Chains of St Peter	1
Stephen, pope	2
Finding of St Stephen	3
Oswald, king	5
Sixtus, pope	6
Afra, martyr	7
Cyriacus and companions	8
Vigil	9
Lawrence, martyr	10
Tiburtius, martyr	11
Clare, virgin	12
Hippolytus, martyr · Vigil	13
Assumption of Mary	15

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 12r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Augustus (days 17–31) + August regimen

1 **Augst haut tags xiiii stund und nachtes x.**

2 **Des sonnen zaichen ist die Junckfrowe.**

3 *Regimen prose (blue initial I):* In dem Augsten so spricht der maist[er] [Benera/Senera?]:

4 man sölle nim[m] dehain [regmel?] von Johans-[wurz?/-tag?] … die hundischen tag sind [noch].

5 ¶ Hüte dich ouch vor milch.

6 ¶ Dehain [unreines?] flaisch ess[e] … ¶ Trincke michten, als ob es honig sye.

7 ¶ Rosethönig [iss] fritags.

8 ¶ Vor unkraut hüte dich, und ouch vor aller hitze.

9 ¶ Din trang[k] sye … und [ge]würmt;

10 hab roset[en] …

Octava Laurentii	17
Agapiti martyris	18
Bernhardi abbatis	20
Octava Marie	22
Bartholomei apostoli · Vigilia	24

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

Ruffi martyris	26
Pelagii episcopi · Augustini episcopi	27
Decollacio Johannis baptiste	29
Felicis et Adaucti martyris	30

TRANSLATION

DAY/NIGHT LINE

[1] "August has 14 hours of day and 10 of night.

[2] The sun's sign is the Virgin."

REGIMEN

[3] *Master [Benera/Senera?] says* (the authority-name is uncertain — **not** Galen):

[4] take no [regimen or medicine?] of [Johans- — either St-John's-wort or St John's day] while the dog-days last;

[5] beware milk;

[6] eat no [unclean?] meat […];

[7] drink moderately, as if it were honey;

[8] take rose-honey on Fridays;

[9] guard against all heat;

[10] let your drink be […] and spiced;

FEAST-DAYS OF AUGUST

Octave of Lawrence	17
Agapitus, martyr	18
Bernard, abbot	20
Octave of Mary	22
Bartholomew, apostle · Vigil	24
Rufus, martyr	26
Pelagius, bishop · Augustine, bishop	27
Beheading of John the Baptist	29
Felix & Adauctus, martyr	30

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

EDITORIAL NOTE

Reading note (f. 12r, August regimen — re-read from the high-resolution master 0246_0026.tif). My earlier low-resolution reading "*der maister Galenus … dehain pürgens von Johanswurz*" was **wrong on three words** and is corrected above: (1) the cited authority is **not Galenus** — it reads "Benera / Senera" (still unidentified, [?]); (2) the word read as "*pürgens*" (purging) actually reads "*[regmel/regmen]*" — i.e. a *Regimen-/Arznei*-type word, **not** "purge"; (3) "*Johans-*" is genuinely ambiguous between **Johanswurz** (St-John's-wort, the herb) and **Johanstag** (St John's day, 24 June). The audit's pharmacological objection therefore landed on a real mis-reading. Two interpretations now stand: *either* "take no [medicine] of St-John's-wort while the dog-days last," *or* — more plausibly, and removing the pharmacological oddity — "from **St John's day** take no [regimen-change], for these are the dog-days." The point is now flagged unresolved at the word level pending collation with Parent 1988.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 12v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

August verse + labor roundel (reaping the grain)

1 Wol uff mit mir in die erden!

2 Die da schniden wollent leren.

3 Dich ouch gar eben uff das brett.

4 Trincke weder kirs[ch], win, noch mett.

5 *Upper-right cursive gloss:* … So du mön ist in der Maget ¶ Die korn und die reben … ¶ Hab gut zu pfleg[en].

6 ¶ Dehein segen uff wasser …

TRANSLATION

VERSE

1 "Up and to work with me, into the earth!

2 / [You] who would learn to reap.

3 / Look well to the board (the measure).

4 / Drink neither cherry[-wine], wine, nor mead."

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

GLOSS

5 […] while the [moon] is in Virgo.

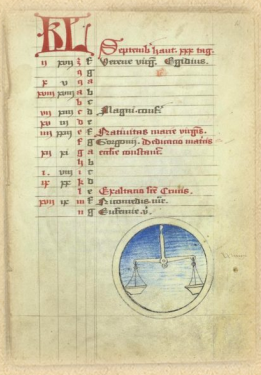
6 ¶ The corn and the vines […].

7 ¶ Tend [them] well.

8 ¶ No [bloodletting?] upon water […].

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

September



folio 13r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

[1] **KL · September haut xxx tag[e].**

Verene virginis · Egidius	1
Magni confessoris	6
Natiuitas Marie virginis	8
Gorgonii · **Dedicacio maioris [ecclesie]**	9
… Constanc[iensis] [dedication of Constance cathedral]	11
Exaltacio sancte Crucis	14
Nicomedis martyris	15
Eufemie virginis	16

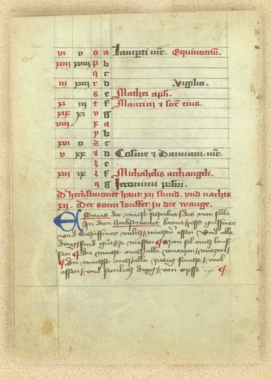
This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

FEAST-DAYS OF SEPTEMBER

Verena, virgin · Giles	1
Magnus, confessor	6
Nativity of Mary	8
Gorgonius · the Dedication of the Greater Church	9
… Constanciensis	11
the Exaltation of the Holy Cross	14
Nicomedes, martyr	15
Euphemia, virgin	16

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 13v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

September (days 17–30) + September regimen

1 **Der herbstmonet haut xii stund und nachts xii.**

2 **Der sonn[e] louffet in die Wauge.**

3 *Regimen prose (blue initial E):* Es sprichet der maist[er] Serapion:

4 das man sölle in dem Herbstmonet … gaiß-fl[a]isch und schäffnermilch michten essen.

5 Und alle ding[e] sind gütlich [zu] messen.

6 ¶ Man sol ouch laussen.

7 ¶ Du magst ouch alle zitig[e] frücht wol essen, und semlich[e] ding[e] von obse.

Lamperti martyris · Equinoctium [autumn equinox]	17
Vigilia	20
Mathei apostoli	21
Mauricii et sociorum eius	22
Cosme et Damiani martyris	27
Michahelis archangeli	29
Jeronimi presbiteri	30

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

DAY/NIGHT LINE

[1] "September has 12 hours of day and 12 of night.

[2] The sun runs into Libra."

REGIMEN

[3] *Master Serapion says:* eat goat-meat and sheep's milk in moderation;

[4] keep all things measured;

[5] **bloodletting is permitted**;

[6] one may freely eat all ripe fruit.

FEAST-DAYS OF SEPTEMBER

Lambert, martyr	17
Vigil	20
Matthew, apostle	21
Maurice and companions	22
Cosmas & Damian, martyr	27
Michael the archangel	29
Jerome, priest	30

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 14r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

September verse + labor roundel (grape harvest / vintage)

1 Gütes mostes han ich vil.
2 Dem ich sin gerne geben wil.
3 Su disem monet solt du nit g[r]än.
4 Und solt zu der lebern adern lan.
5 *Upper-right cursive gloss:* … in der Wauge hüte der … gemächt ¶ … den wein recht.
6 ¶ Wilt du wol lauffen, lieber, [so] komest [du] umb din gelücke …

TRANSLATION

VERSE

1 "I have much good must [new wine], / which I will gladly give.
2 / In this month you should not [be bled in general];
3 / but let the liver-vein."

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

GLOSS

4 […while the sun is] in Libra, guard the […] genitals[?].

5 ¶ […take] the wine properly.

6 ¶ If you would run/travel well, dear [friend], [then] you [may] lose your luck […].

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

October

folio 14v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

[1] **KL · Der October haut xxxi tag[e].**

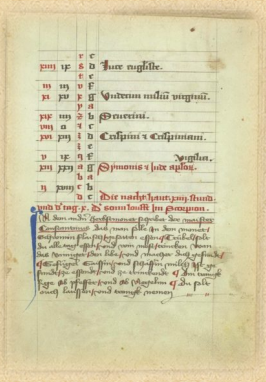
Remigii episcopi	1
Francisci confessoris	4
Fidis virginis	6
Marci pape	7
Calixti pape	14
Galli confessoris	16

TRANSLATION

FEAST-DAYS OF OCTOBER

Remigius, bishop	1
Francis, confessor	4
Faith, virgin	6
Mark, pope	7
Callixtus, pope	14
Gall, confessor	16

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 15r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

October (days 17–31) + October regimen

1 **Die nacht haut xiiii stund und der tag x.**

2 **Der sonn[e] loufft in Scorpion.**

3 *Regimen prose (blue initial A):* In dem [Herbst]monet so sprichet der maister Constantinus:

4 das man sölle in dem monet scharm[in] flaisch, sauer essen.

5 ¶ Treubel solt du alle tag essen, und vom most trincken;

6 wan das ve[r]miret den lib und macht dich gesund.

7 ¶ Gaiß-flaisch und schäffinmilch … ¶ Im trang[k] sye ab pfeffer und ab Mageren.

8 ¶ Du solt ouch laussen, und dehain nemen.

Luce euangeliste	18
Undecim milium virginum [Ursula and the 11,000 virgins]	21
Seuerini	23
Crispini et Crispiniani	25
Vigilia	27
Symonis et Jude apostolorum	28

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

DAY/NIGHT LINE

[1] "The night has 14 hours and the day 10.

[2] The sun runs in Scorpio."

REGIMEN

[3] *Master Constantine says:* eat sharp, sour meat;

[4] **eat grapes every day and drink the new wine — it strengthens the body and makes you healthy**;

[5] season drink with pepper and marjoram;

[6] let blood and take no medicine.

FEAST-DAYS OF OCTOBER

Luke the Evangelist	18
the Eleven Thousand Virgins	21
Severinus	23
Crispin & Crispinian	25
Vigil	27
Simon & Jude, apostles	28

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 15v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

October verse + labor roundel (sowing the winter grain)

1 In gottes namen, amen,

2 säge ich minen samen.

3 Ich bitte dich, herre sancte Galle,

4 das er mir vast wol und ouch nutzlichen valle.

5 *Upper-right cursive gloss:* Der Scorpion haut über die scham gewalt.

6 ¶ Var schon … werden also.

7 ¶ … ¶ … tötlich …

TRANSLATION

VERSE

1 "In God's name, amen, / I sow my seed.

2 / I pray you, lord Saint Gall, / that it fall for me very well and profitably."

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

GLOSS

[3] The Scorpion has power over the genitals.

[4] ¶ Proceed gently […] it becomes so.

[5] ¶ […] ¶ […] deadly […].

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

November

folio 16r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

[1] **KL · Der November haut xxx tag[e].**

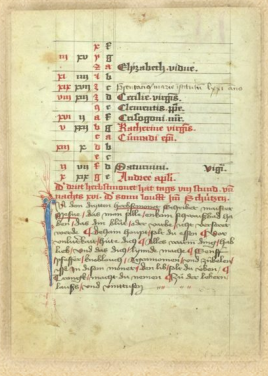
Festum omnium sanctorum [All Saints]	1
Commemoracio animarum fidelium [All Souls]	2
Leonhardi confessoris	6
Theodori martyris · Martini pape	9/10
Martini episcopi [Martin of Tours]	11
Briccii episcopi	13
Othmari abbatis	16

TRANSLATION

FEAST-DAYS OF NOVEMBER

All Saints	1
All Souls	2
Leonard, confessor	6
Theodore, martyr · Martin, pope	9/10
Martin, bishop	11
Brice, bishop	13
Othmar, abbot	16

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 16v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

November (days 17–30) + November regimen

1 **Der drit[te] herbstmonet hat tags viii stund und nachtes xvi.**

2 **Der sonn[e] loufft in Schützen.**

3 *Regimen prose (blue initial I):* In dem [Winter]monet schribet maister Mesue:

4 das man sölle dehain schwaißbad haben … ¶ Dehein houpte sol[t] du essen.

5 ¶ Vor unliebe hüte dich.

6 ¶ Alles warm[en] ding[s] hab lieb, und das dich lynde mache.

7 ¶ Senff, pfeffer, knoblouch, Agramonen und zwibeln iß in disem monet … ¶ Zu der lebern laube …

Elizabeth vidue [Elizabeth, widow]	17/19
Presentacio Marie [virginis] *(later marginal note: lxxi ano)*	21
Cecilie virginis	22
Clementis pape	23
Crisogoni martyris	24
Katherine virginis	25
Cunradi episcopi [Conrad of Constance]	26

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

Saturnini · Vigilia	29
Andree apostoli	30

TRANSLATION

DAY/NIGHT LINE

[1] "The third autumn-month has 8 hours of day and 16 of night.

[2] The sun runs in Sagittarius."

REGIMEN

[3] *Master Mesue writes:* take no sweat-baths;

[4] eat warming foods;

[5] **eat mustard, pepper, garlic, agrimony and onions this month**;

[6] keep the body warm;

[7] let blood at the liver.

FEAST-DAYS OF NOVEMBER

Elizabeth, widow	17/19
Presentation of Mary	21
Cecilia, virgin	22
Clement, pope	23
Chrysogonus, martyr	24
Catherine, virgin	25
Conrad, bishop	26
Saturninus · Vigil	29
Andrew, apostle	30

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 17r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

November verse + labor roundel (chopping wood)

1 Ich wil schit-howen vil,
2 als mans der winter komen wil,
3 mit siner kelti also seren,
4 das ich mich vor dem froste müge erneren.
5 *Upper-right cursive gloss:* Der Schütze schadet der hüft … ¶ [Z]u laussen an den armen … ¶ das houpt baden … ¶ Du solt nagel … beschniden.
6 ¶ So macht du fröhlich sin …

TRANSLATION

VERSE

1 "I will chop much firewood, / since winter is about to come / with its cold so harsh,
2 / that I may protect myself against the frost."

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

GLOSS

3 The Archer (Sagittarius) harms the hips/thighs.

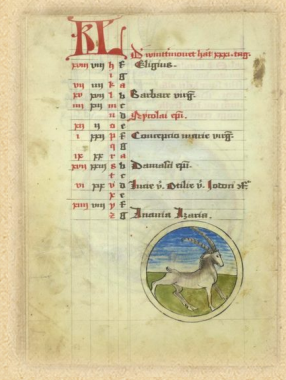
4 ¶ [It is good] to let blood at the arms […].

5 ¶ Bathe the head […].

6 ¶ You should [not] […].

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

December



folio 17v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

[1] **KL · Der wintmonet hat xxxi tag[e].**

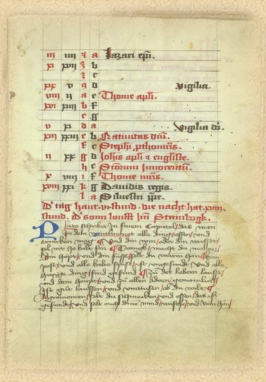
Eligius	1
Barbare virginis	4
Nycolai episcopi	6
Concepcio Marie virginis	8
Damasi episcopi	11
Lucie virginis · Otilie virginis · Jodoci [confessoris]	13
Anania, Azaria [et Misael] [the Three Holy Children]	16

TRANSLATION

FEAST-DAYS OF DECEMBER

Eligius	1
Barbara, virgin	4
Nicholas, bishop	6
Conception of Mary	8
Damasus, bishop	11
Lucy, virgin · Odilia, virgin · Jodocus	13
Ananias & Azarias	16

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 18r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

December (days 17–31) + December regimen

1 **Der tag haut vi stund.**

2 **Die nacht hat xviii stund.**

3 **Der sonn[e] loufft in Stainbock.**

4 *Regimen prose (blue initial P):* Plato schribet in sinem capitel:

5 das man in dem Wintermonet alle ding[e] essen sol, [die]
warm [sind].

6 ¶ Und im wein … warm [halten].

7 ¶ Trang[k] mache du nemen.

8 ¶ Hönig gesotten und [bei] dem fü[r] sol[t] du warm han.

9 ¶ … alle grosse ding[e] sind gesund.

10 ¶ Zu der lebern laußе, und [zu] dem houpte, und zu allen
[a]dern gemainlich.

11 ¶ Agramonen solt du [in] semmeln [backen?] und essen;

12 das ist gesund.

Lazari episcopi	17
Vigilia	20
Thome apostoli	21

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

Vigilia Domini	24
Natiuitas Domini [Christmas]	25
Stephani prothomartyris	26
Johannis apostoli et euangeliste	27
Sanctorum Innocentum	28
Thome martyris [Thomas Becket]	29
Dauidis regis	30
Siluestri pape	31

TRANSLATION

DAY/NIGHT LINE

[1] "The day has 6 hours, the night 18.

[2] The sun runs in Capricorn."

REGIMEN

[3] *Plato writes:* **eat all warm things**;

[4] [drink] warmed wine;

[5] boiled honey kept warm by the fire;

[6] let blood at the liver, the head and all the veins generally;

[7] eat agrimony.

FEAST-DAYS OF DECEMBER

Lazarus, bishop	17
Vigil	20
Thomas, apostle	21
Vigil of the Lord	24
the Nativity of the Lord	25
Stephen, protomartyr	26
John, Apostle & Evangelist	27
the Holy Innocents	28
Thomas, martyr	29
David, king	30
Sylvester, pope	31

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 18v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

December verse + labor roundel (slaughtering the ox)

1 Mit würsten und mit k[r]auten
2 wil ich min hus wol b[er]auten.
3 Also hät das jaur am ende.
4 Got uns sin ewigs rich sende.
5 *Upper-right cursive gloss:* Der Stainbock schadet den knüwen.
6 ¶ Du solt mit truwen der haut wol warten.
7 ¶ … unlust genesen, so du magst.
8 ¶ Ze füß[en] … wäschen …

TRANSLATION

VERSE

1 "With sausages and with herbs / I will provision my house well.
2 / Thus the year has its end.
3 / May God send us his eternal kingdom."

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

GLOSS

[4] The Ibex (Capricorn) harms the knees.

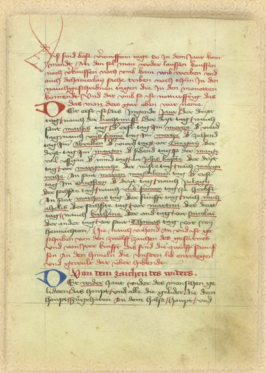
[5] ¶ You should faithfully take good care of the skin […].

EDITORIAL NOTE

End of the Calendar (f. 1r–18v). The twelve months form a complete *Kalendarium* of the diocese of Constance, each equipped with (a) the saints' feasts in Latin, (b) a German line on the length of day and night and the sun's zodiac sign, (c) a German monthly health-regimen attributed in turn to a famous medical authority — *Almansor, Ypocras (Hippocrates), Galienus (Galen), Johannes, Avicenna, Averrois (Averroes), [the maister], Galenus, Serapion, Constantinus (Constantine the African), Mesue, Plato* — (d) a first-person mnemonic verse, (e) a zodiac roundel, and (f) a labor-of-the-month roundel. Together (b)–(c)–(the upper-margin glosses) make this a practical *Aderlass-* and *Regimen-Kalender* (bloodletting and health calendar).

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

The Twelve Signs & The Body



folio 19r — the original leaf

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSCRIPTION

[red] Es sind böse, unglücksam[e] tage, [die] in dem [jaur] kom[m]ende [sind];
in den sal man weder laussen, lousen noch röbussen, noch romb kain[en] romb wachen;
und ouch dehein-erlay siech[tum] triben noch thün, [noch] in den mauchf[…]schuben tragen,
die in den monoten kom[m]ende.
Und deromb so ist [es] nottürfftig, das man des gar eben war[t] neme.
¶ [blue D] Der erst[e] böse tag [ist an den] Innocende;
jaur der drit[t] tag nauch der nachtmisse;
der drit[t] tag nauch sant Marien tag;
der erst tag im Merze;
und ander tag mauch frowe;
der drit[t] tag im Merze;
D[er] ander tag vor Crispin[?];
der drit[t] tag im Abrellen;
D[er] ander tag vor Gregorii;
der drit[t] tag im Maugen;
und der ander tag vor sant Johans haupte;
der drit[t] tag vor margarauge;
der näste tag nauch maugen;
…vauge[?];
an sant Marien Magdalenen tag;
der drit[t] tag im Ougsten;
der drit[t] tag nauch Pelagii;
der näste tag nauch unser frowen tag ze Geburt;
an sant Marterus tag;
der fünfte tag nauch Michaelis;
der näste tag vor Martini;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

der drit[t] tag nauch [Bukkine?];

…tag;

der ander tag vor sant Niclai;

der ander tag vor sant Thomas tag;

vor wai[h]ennachten.

¶ Die nauchvolgende[n] an[s], und uns ist geschriben von den zwölf zaichen des gestirnes, und von [der] krafft.

Das sind die grossen krafft, so in den himeln;

die ou[i]sten lib[…] ennen[?], und gewalt darüber habende.

¶ **Von dem zaichen des Widers**.

[blue D] Der Wider haut under des menschen[s] zegli[d]ern das houpt, und alle die glider, die dem houpt zü gehören;

an dem halse, [das] houpt, und …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

These are the evil, unlucky days that fall in the year;
on them one should neither let blood, nor bathe, nor undertake any venture, nor pursue any cure,
nor [travel] in the months to come;
therefore it is needful that this be carefully heeded.
The list follows, each day reckoned from a feast:
the first evil day at Holy Innocents [28 Dec.];
the third day after Christmas;
the third day after St Mark's[?] day;
the first day in March, and others;
the third day in April;
the third day in May;
the day before the Beheading of St John;
the third day before St Margaret;
on St Mary Magdalene's day;
the third day in August;
the third day after Pelagius;
the day after the Nativity of Our Lady;
the fifth day after Michaelmas;
the day before St Martin;
the second day before St Nicholas;
the second day before St Thomas;
[and the day] before Christmas.
What now follows is written for us concerning the twelve signs of the heavens and of their power -- the great powers that are in the heavens, the highest, that hold sway over [the body].
Of the sign of Aries.
The Ram holds, among the members of man, the head and all the members belonging to the head;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

[26] at the neck, the head, and...

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 19v — the original leaf

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSCRIPTION

(roundel:
a ram — Aries) …[ar]mind[?] [w]assen[?] und oren;
sunst[?] lessgan[?];
zäne und zungen;
und alle die glider, die dem houpt zü gehören;
aber wund[?] [vil] des libe und haut ouch;
alle ire prästusen;
die den selben gelid[ern] schaden müssen;
das stüle[?] vil gesprochen;
wan Mars[?] zü siechtan[?] yen[?] stat;
es machet er die … ¶ hamerlay siechtagen;
als wol man an dem houpt, und an sinen gliden;
wan er über die andern gelidern an kainem gewalt haut;
und das selb[e] sind die zaichen alle sampt;
den selben gelidern;
die über si gewalt habende.
¶ Es spricht der maister **Bartholomeus**:
wan die mön in einem zaichen sye, so [sol] man die selben gelider mit kainem isen beriern,
da[mit] das zaichen gewalt über haut;
die wil du mön … ist.
¶ Alle die wile du mön im Wid[er] haut, es sol man das houpt noch kein[s] sin[er] lib[er] mit isen beriern;
und du von ist [es] mit güt[em] den bart scheren, noch ze laussen an dem houpte;
noch als[o] dehain ding, das man mit isen muß thün.
¶ Wär es auch, das am …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 ...the [arms?] and ears;

2 the teeth and tongue, and all the members belonging to the head;

3 and much of the body and skin too;

4 all their afflictions that may harm those same members.

5 When Mars stands ill[?] it brings about many kinds of sickness, whether in the head or in its members;

6 for Aries has power over no other members but these, and the [twelve] signs together each rule their own members.

7 Master Bartholomew says:

8 while the moon is in a sign, one must not touch with iron the members over which that sign has power,

9 so long as the moon stands [there].

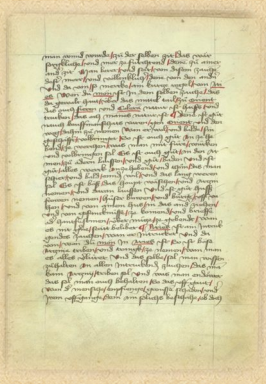
10 All the while the moon is in Aries one should not touch the head or any of its members with iron;

11 therefore it is not good to shave the beard, nor to let blood at the head;

12 nor any such thing that must be done with iron.

13 Were it also that...

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 20r — the original leaf

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSCRIPTION

…man kompt[?] und ze der selben zit;
das wär prysklüge[?];
und gut ze fürgreng[?];
doch gü[t] amer[?] [a]nd[?] gut.
¶ man kurt[?] und sur von disem rauche[?];
des mer[?];
und wollenklüg[?];
Jene von den amen[?];
und da von ist [es] merka[?];
ain kurze regel von Wid[er].
¶ Wan du mön im Wider in dem selben rauche[?] da gewalt haut;
aber das mittel tail zü Orient;
das ouch sieren[?];
und **Colera** natur ist, haisse und trucken, das auch manes natur ist.
¶ Jene ist gut nauch kaufmans[?] das raur[?] von Orient;
und der weg dahin ze nemen;
wan er wol und hilf sin[?] spezerie volbringen.
¶ So ist ouch gut an ze[?] bad[?] sye[?] wertgan[?] kaas;
man mit fürs vonklen[?] und volbringen sol.
¶ Es ist ouch gut in den menschen zü adern laussen;
und gut baden;
und ist gut salbe-werk ange-haben;
und thün, das man gehaier[?] und bald sani[?] und wol;
und das lang varen[?].
¶ Es ist böse das houpt wäschen;
und nem[en] … frowen nemen[?];
Hüser buwen;
und kurtze[?] hoff[?] … nemen, und sur[?] kain laussen;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

und … frowen nemen[?];
Hüser buwen, und brücke hoff[?];
und von gestain-misse ze komende;
und brüche[?].
¶ D[er] gauch[?] ist mer über müzze ze spende[?];
wan es mit jr[?] stat beliber[?].
¶ **Weiß[?]** er am Wid[er] yendes zaichen, wan es im rauche[?];
und da von, wan dü mön in **Aries** ist, es ist böse arzne[i] triben und tranck ze nemen;
wan man es alles [v]ermiret[?].
Und das selbe sol man wissen ze halten an allen siechtenden zaichen, das man kain arzni stiben[?] sol;
und was man andewa[?], das sol man auch behalten;
es das ist stat[?];
wan d[er] mensch enpfangen grosse[n] schaden, und man uff sicher[?] dem im pflege beschehe;
ob das …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 ...one comes at that same time, that would be [favourable?] and good to undertake;

2 [yet only] moderately good.

3 A short rule for Aries:

4 while the moon is in Aries, which has power over the middle part toward the Orient [East],

5 and is of choleric nature, hot and dry, which is also the nature of man.

6 It is good, after a merchant's manner, [to set out] toward the East and to take that road,

7 for one may well bring spice-trade to good end.

8 So too it is good to let blood, good to bathe, and good to begin salve-work,

9 so that one may be soon and well [healed].

10 It is bad to wash the head;

11 bad to take a wife;

12 to build houses and bridges;

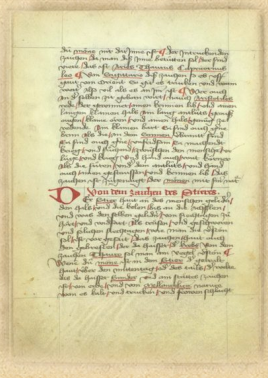
13 and [bad] to deal in stones[?].

14 And since the moon is in Aries, it is bad to give medicine or take a drink, for it is all spoiled[?];

15 and this same rule is to be kept for all the sickly signs -- that one should give no medicine;

16 whatever one undertakes, one should likewise keep [this in mind], for else the sick person may take great harm.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 20v — the original leaf

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSCRIPTION

…dü mön mit dar inne ist.

¶ Der[er], in [den] truebenden gauchen, da man des inne beriten sol, der sind viere:

das ist **Aries, Thaurus**, **Capricornus** [und] **Leo**[?].

¶ **Von dem capitario** des gauchen[?]:

es ist roß[?] haut von Orient;

es [ist] gut ze trincken, und warm wäret, als es an jm ist.

¶ Wer ouch an d[er] selben zit geboren wirt — man **Aristotiles** rede[t] — der [ist] gewirmet[?]:

einen kurzen lib, und einen langen klainen hals;

ain lang antlit;

und ein[…] ousen[?];

klaine ören;

und einen hals genüg ze redende;

ein[en] klainen bart.

Ei sind ouch eine[…] born[?];

als die in dem cornu[?] [w]ramst[?];

und ei sind ouch eine[…] consideram[?];

ei machtend baert;

und sichend zwüschen den menschen;

vor hirs[?] und klar;

uns Hans[?] auch sicut isenen[?];

als die süren[?];

und [an] dem antlit;

und hand[?];

ouch sinen gestaussan[?];

und kainen lib.

Das zaichen, da[zu] zü-gehöret der mön mit sin[er] matt[?] …

¶ **Von dem zaichen des Stiers**.

[red D] Der Stier haut an des menschen gelidern den hals;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

28 und die kelen, bis in die nüsslen[?];
29 und was den selben gelidern von prestange zü-gehört;
30 und vorbat;
31 als trüsen[?], und geschworen, und slüssen[?] prestange[?];
32 wie man die rösten[?] sol, ist vor gesait.
33 Das zaichen haut auch den gebresten der da haisst der lebre[?];
34 von den zaichen **Thaurus** sol man am capitel disen[?].
35 ¶ Wenne du mön ist in dem Stier, d[er] gewalt haut über den mittentag;
36 ist des tails;
37 und [ist ein] kalter[?], die da haisst [Z]imber[?];
38 und [ist] am dritten zaichen;
39 ist von erde, und von **Mellancholica** natur, wan es kalt und trucken;
40 und [von] frowen[?] geslacht …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 ...the moon being therein.
2 Of the turbid signs, in which one must be wary [of treatment], there are four:
3 that is Aries, Taurus, Capricorn and Leo[?].
4 Whoever is born at that time -- as Aristotle says -- is shaped thus:
5 a short body and a long slender neck;
6 a long face;
7 small ears;
8 a neck given to talk [talkative];
9 and a small beard.
10 They are also [contentious?];
11 they grow bearded, and look [keenly] among people.
12 That sign is assigned to the moon with its [matter]...
13 Of the sign of Taurus.
14 The Bull holds, among the members of man, the neck and the throat, down to the [collar-bones],
15 and whatever belongs to those members by way of afflictions -- swellings, ulcers and the like, as is said before.
16 When the moon is in Taurus, which has power over the South, it is a cold [sign],
17 of earth and of melancholic nature, for it is cold and dry, and of feminine kind...

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 21r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Taurus (roundel: a bull; red heading Thaurus)

…[es] ist gut garten sayen;
und win-satten;
birwen[?] und böm pwoizen[?];
wan si waossende hals[?];
und werdend lang.
¶ Dene ist ouch gut hü[s]er büwe;
und [g]este[?] sin;
bem[?] knwen[?];
und huss-rowa nemen;
und ist dem gut alles das jn ze-hande[?];
das man wol[?], das langbroicig[?] sye.
¶ Es ist böse an dem hals nemen[?];
und die kelen mit jsen beriern.
¶ Es ist böse [s]oduge[?] [Z]an ze waschen;
und rosse-varen[?] ze verstande[?].
¶ Das zaichen, [s]o du mön [im Wider] ist, es maget es ouch kalt und truben;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

17 gut;
18 und vovet[?] by der erden Nebel;
19 das selbe tüt es an sinem uffgange, so es uff[ge]haut, als wil als es an jme stat und ist.
20 ¶ Wer ouch zü der zit geboren wirt, der haut weitt und braut;
21 lange nasen;
22 weitt nasslich;
23 grouss ougen und schön;
24 krusse haut[?];
25 am grossen hals;
26 er[ist] brust ouch[?] gehaut;
27 und woome er gaut, so sigt er sonderschig an die erden.
28 ¶ Das zaichen glichet sich mit siner mature der planeten **Venus**, und [mit] den **Mellancolicus**;
29 und vermerend[?] glich[?].
30 ¶ **Geminin**.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 ...it is good to sow gardens and to set vines;
2 to graft[?] trees, so that they grow well and tall.
3 It is also good to build houses, [to settle], and to take household goods;
4 and good is all that should be lasting.
5 It is bad to [treat] the neck, and to touch the throat with iron;
6 bad to [scrape?] a tooth.
7 While the moon stands [in Taurus] it also makes [the weather] cold and turbid, with mist near the earth;
8 the same it does at its rising.
9 Whoever is born at that time has a wide and broad, long nose;
10 wide nostrils;
11 large and fair eyes;
12 curly hair;
13 a big neck;
14 and a [broad] chest;
15 and when he walks he looks particularly toward the ground.
16 This sign resembles in its nature the planet Venus, and the melancholic [type].
17 Gemini [catchword].

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 21v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Gemini (roundel: two naked infants; red heading Von den Zwiling)

1 **Von den Zwiling**.
2 [blue D] Der Zwiling, das zaichen ist warm und füchte;
3 und haut [unter] den menschen-geliden die achseln;
4 arme;
5 hand;
6 und reglich[?] vein-blut[?];
7 und die [d]rüsen, die in[en] gehörend;
8 oder gegende sellend[?].
9 ¶ Wan dü mön mit ist in dem zaichen, [der] gewalt haut über das tail, weile das da haisset **Occident**,
10 das ouch am gewölfaltigen[?] gauch ist;
11 und [es ist] luft[es] mate;
12 wan es ist warm und füchte;
13 und ouch nüw[?] geslacht;
14 …und güt[?] hü[s]men[?] traugen[?] und klar[?].
15 Wer sich [b]essinet kan, sol es aber mit westenen[?].

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

16 ¶ Du mön in den vorstehen[den] zaichen ist… es ist ouch gut[e] vorlüge[?] an ze-heband;
17 und roß-faren[?] ze verstande[?].
18 ¶ Laussen ist böse an den handen und armen;
19 und daran auch regmen[?];
20 und die nagel besniden;
21 es ist auch böse die ader mit isen beriern;
22 und smalich[?] zü lassan;
23 wan man müsste frowend[?] geslahen[?];
24 wan das gü[t] blut sye;
25 … ze maul mochte;
26 der arme woet auch sere;
27 und aber geschwollen;
28 und vodorlen[?] sterbende.
29 Die lüt, das woer, [s]o du mön gut [und] empfindt-hafftig[?] woere an dem himeln.
30 ¶ Jene ist mit…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 Of Gemini.

2 The sign of the Twins is warm and moist, and holds, among the members of man, the shoulders, arms, hands,

3 and the [veins and sinews] belonging to them.

4 When the moon is in this sign, which has power over the part called the Occident [West],

5 which is of the twofold [bicorporeal] signs, and is of airy matter -- for it is warm and moist.

6 The moon being in the foregoing sign, it is also good to begin [ventures] and to [make trial of horses?].

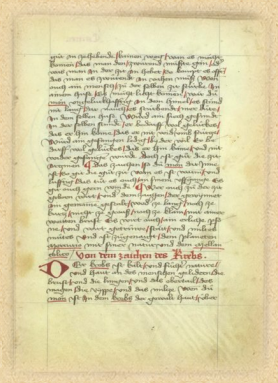
7 Bloodletting is bad at the hands and arms, and likewise to cut the nails;

8 it is also bad to touch the veins with iron, and ill to let blood [here], for one would [risk harm];

9 the arm would swell and grow sore, even mortally.

10 [Such would be the case], unless the moon were well and fortunately placed in the heavens.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 22r — the original leaf

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSCRIPTION

1 …gut anzeheb[en];
2 kainen weg;
3 wan es maget komen, das man der frowend müsste thün;
4 und was man an der zit anhebet, es kompt es offt, das man es frowend an wachsen muß.
5 ¶ Wan ouch ain mön sye zü der selben zit geschicke[?], an ainem hus es maget lichte komen;
6 wär du mön ungelücklich stät an dem himel, es stürbe[?] mit lang[em?];
7 der mauch es stürbende, mer arte[?] in dem selben hus.
8 ¶ Wird am Stab[?] geschende[?] in der selben stunde, der bedarff wol gelückes, das es ihm kann[?];
9 das es mit widerkomb[?] künget[?];
10 und ain geschenten ledig[?];
11 by der wil er bedarff wol gelückes, das es ihm kome;
12 und mit vonder geschenge[?];
13 wonde[?] doch ist [es] gut die zü arznen.
14 ¶ Das zaichen, so es im mön die jme ist, es [ist] gut die gut[e] zit;
15 wan es ist warm und lustig;
16 das tüt es ouch an sinen offgange;
17 es zü ouch yren[?] vom zit[?].
18 ¶ Wer ouch zü der zit geboren wirt, und [unter] dem zaichen, der gewirmet[?] ain gemaine gestalt,
19 woed ze lang nauch ge-…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

[1] ...good to begin -- by no means [otherwise];

[2] for it may come about that one must [redo it], and what one begins at that time often comes to be done over again.

[3] When the moon at that same time is ill placed in a house, harm may easily come;

[4] were the moon to stand unlucky in the heavens, [the sick] would die only after long [illness].

[5] Whoever is wounded[?] in that same hour has great need of fortune to recover;

[6] yet it is good to physic them.

[7] While the moon is in this sign it is a good time, for it is warm and merry;

[8] the same it does at its rising.

[9] Whoever is born at that time, under this sign, gets a middling stature, somewhat long...

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 22v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Cancer (roundel: a crayfish/lobster; red heading Cancer)

1 …das taile, das da haisset **Septemtrio** oder Mond[?];
2 das auch am wendelhar[?] gauchen ist.
3 ¶ Wann sich der Sonn[e] wandelt, [und] das es dann uff-gehaussen ist, [so] ist [es] guot er[?] dene;
4 und der abe[?];
5 wan er möge höher komen, man macht es;
6 ist ouch sin wassrig;
7 es zaichen;
8 und [es ist] eblig[?] mauren[?] mate kalt und füchte.
9 Darnme ist [es] zelten ze hand, und varen lassen[?] dem taile, der woelet[?], das da haisset Septemtrio oder Norden.
10 ¶ Es ist ouch alle ding gut ze tünde, die man mit wasser-salben[?] gan sol und müsse;
11 es ze [m]alen[?] sol …gen, aber uff den wasser-varen[?].
12 Es ist [g]ut ze malen[?];
13 …sigen[?];
14 aber uff dem wasser-varen.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

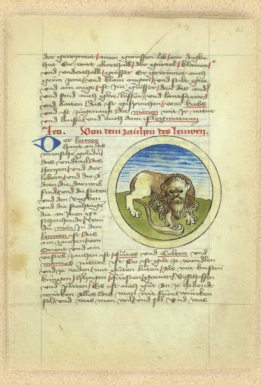
15 Es ist auch böse arzne[i] triben und tranck nemen;
16 und es sol man de[n] siech haben in dem hus, wan es gehöret darzü.
17 ¶ Es ist gut alles das an ze-wachende, das man schnelle ernde sol;
18 und das man mit namen offt nemet.
19 ¶ Es ist böse regmen[?] zü der brust;
20 und güter knwon[?];
21 und [eh]liche lüt machen;
22 und von ainem hus in das ander ziehen;
23 und an ainen gut[en] uff[?].
24 ¶ Es ist böse[s] anzeheben, wo man mit fürs wirken sol;
25 und was man wil, das langbroivig sye.
26 ¶ Diß zaichen [ist] güt bald, [wenn] es du mön die jme ist;
27 das selb tüt es an sinem uffgange.
28 ¶ Wer an der zit geboren wirt…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 ...the part called Septemtrio [North];
2 which is also of the [movable] signs.
3 When the sun changes and has risen, it is good;
4 for it may rise higher.
5 It is watery;
6 a [movable] sign, of cold and moist matter.
7 Therefore [treatment] is seldom [advised], leaving be the part called the North.
8 It is good to do all things that must be done with water;
9 but [ill] to go upon the water.
10 It is also bad to give medicine and take a drink;
11 and the sick should be kept in the house, for it belongs thereto.
12 It is good [to sow] all that should grow, that one would harvest quickly.
13 It is bad to [treat] the breast;
14 bad to wed folk;
15 to move from one house to another.
16 It is bad to begin anything to be worked with fire, or that should be lasting.
17 This sign is good [for weather] while the moon is in it;
18 the same at its rising.
19 Whoever is born at that time...

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 23r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

(end of Cancer; then Leo, red heading Leo · Von dem zaichen des Leuwen)

…der gewirmet ainen grossen lib, am dicke;
haut er roit über al;
der spiegel[?] klaine und [s]underhalb[?] grosse;
er gewirmet ouch [ain] klain[es] gane[?];
und sin[…] zele[?];
und am ouge ist jm wasser, das [anders als] die ander[en];
und [s]ind ouch yna[?] vasser[?];
und lampfuosse;
und boiten[?];
das ist gesprochen vom **Krebs**.
¶ Und ist zügenaut dem mönen mit der nature, und [s]üsse[?];
und ouch dem **flegmaticus**.
¶ Leo.
Von dem zaichen des Leuwen.
[blue D] Der Leuwe haut an des menschen geliden das oberhalb des [r]ucken;
das ouch [das] hergen;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

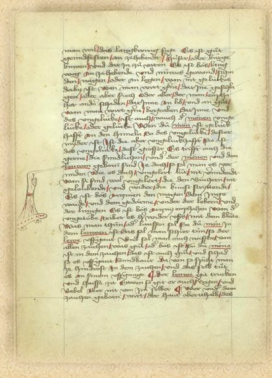
17 und der lebon[?];
18 und die [a]rm[?];
19 ouch die [d]rüm[?] sind;
20 und die zeiten;
21 und den ruggen;
22 und die prestange die in jnen ze schehende.
23 ¶ Wan du mön in dem Lewen ist, das am gauchen von **Orient** und am vesten gauchen ist,
24 [es ist] fures und **Colera**, und mannes nature ist.
25 Es ist gut ze wandlen und ze reden mit güten lüten, als mit kaiseren, künigen, bischofen, fürsten, frowen,
26 byschoffen[?], und prelaten.
27 Es ist auch gut an ze-gebend alles das man mit fürs wirken sol;
28 und was man wil und sol;
29 und was…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 ...gets a large, thick body;
2 he is red all over;
3 the [pupils] small and otherwise large;
4 he also gets a small [...];
5 and the eye is watery, unlike the others;
6 and they are [also watery];
7 and lame-footed[?].
8 This is said of Cancer.
9 And it is assigned to the moon in nature, and to the phlegmatic [type].
10 Leo.
11 Of the sign of the Lion.
12 The Lion holds, among the members of man, the upper part of the back;
13 also the heart;
14 and the liver;
15 and the [arms?];
16 the sides;
17 and the back;
18 and the afflictions that befall them.
19 When the moon is in Leo, which is of the Orient and of the fixed signs, it is fire and choleric, of masculine nature.
20 It is good to deal and speak with great people -- with emperors, kings, bishops, princes, ladies and prelates.
21 It is also good to begin all that should be worked with fire;
22 and whatever one would...

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 23v — the original leaf

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSCRIPTION

1 …man wil, das langbroivig sye.
2 Es ist gut anzehebend hüser oder brügge buwen, und die in zü varen;
3 und es ist bös[e] lang[e] varen an ze-hebende;
4 und [es] mineret gewand[?];
5 regmen[?];
6 den nasen oder an basten[?];
7 wan mit gelückes daby, das man woet[?];
8 … wan man woet sin[e] bezaben[?];
9 darumme;
10 und das ongelücke ist;
11 ouch mauch der mönen ongelücke oder gelücke.
12 Wan dü mön ist gelück-hafft an dem himeln, so [ist] das ongelück-hafft mit der [gemildert];
13 ist [es] die aber ongelück-hafft, so ist das ongelücke das grösser.
14 Es triffet ouch die gerne[?], die smidlichen[?];
15 und [die] der mönen und [unter] den Lewen geboren sind;
16 so doch sol man es mer miden;
17 wie es doch ongelücket lüt mit gemodendt[?];
18 wan si sind wol gelert, die den büchern mit gelaubende;
19 und ander[e], die kunst-striebende[?].
20 Es ist bös regmen[?] den nasen;
21 den jnre[?]…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 ...have lasting.
2 It is good to begin to build houses or bridges, and to travel into them;
3 and it is bad to begin long journeys;
4 for [success comes only] with fortune.
5 The moon increases [either] luck or ill-luck:
6 when the moon is fortunate in the heavens, the ill is thereby [softened];
7 but if it is unfortunate, the ill-luck is the greater.
8 It strikes especially those born under the moon and the Lion;
9 yet one should rather avoid [bleeding then];
10 for though it brings ill-luck, [the children of Leo] are well learned, those who trust to books,
11 and others who pursue art.
12 It is bad to [treat] the nose;
13 the inner [parts]...

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 24r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

(end of Leo; then Virgo, roundel: a maiden holding flowers; red heading Von dem zaichen der Junckfrowen)

1 …[gür]tels;
2 armen;
3 wassen[?] lib;
4 und underhalb same;
5 klamen lib;
6 er haut ouch sinen woerten[?] minne[?];
7 und klaines haut;
8 und smädet[?];
9 ouch armen[?] buch;
10 und wausse[?] han.
11 ¶ Das zaichen ist zügenaut mit siner nature den planeten **Mercurio**[?];
12 und [s]atwurmie[?];
13 und dem **flegmaticus**;
14 als vor geschriben staut.
15 ¶ **Von dem zaichen der Junck-frowen**.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

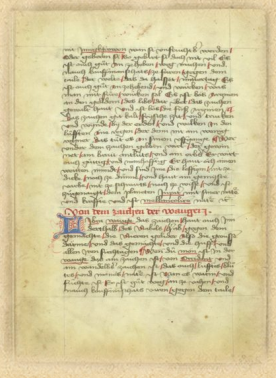
16 [red D] Die Junck-frow, das zaichen haut an des menschen geliden den nabel;
17 und den buch jm überhalb des nabels;
18 und was da [in der] miten ist;
19 [und] mönchsa[?] geliden;
20 als das jnfer-wande[?];
21 und die gemächt[?];
22 und [v]or prechtage[?].
23 ¶ Wen dü mön ist in der Junck-frowen, das am [g]omames[?] zaichen ist, das ouch gewalt haut über das taile,
24 das da haisset **Occidens** oder Ennder[?];
25 und die [v]orden[?];
26 **Mellancolice** und frowen natur ist;
27 wan es bald und trucken ist.
28 So ist [es] gut gutter sege[?];
29 und [r]eber[?];
30 und alles gut thün, das von erden [w]erden sol und mag;
31 wan in allen wachsfalwigen[?] zaichen, als pmo **Sagittarius** [und] **Pisces**, die genam sind.
32 So ist [es] gut ze trincke[n], was man epden roy[?] sehig haut[?];
33 und was sich ehe vol ergibe[?].
34 Es ist auch gut [eh]liche frowen nemen;
35 vaystrowen[?];
36 und…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 ...[the girdle];
2 the arms;
3 the [lower] body, and beneath;
4 a small body;
5 he also has [...];
6 small hair;
7 and [slight];
8 also a small belly.
9 This sign is assigned in its nature to the planet Mercury[?];
10 and to the phlegmatic [type], as is written before.
11 Of the sign of the Virgin (Virgo).
12 The Maiden holds, among the members of man, the navel;
13 and the belly above the navel;
14 and whatever is in the middle;
15 [the entrails];
16 and the [...];
17 and [their] afflictions.
18 When the moon is in Virgo, which is [an earthy] sign, having power over the part called Occident [West];
19 it is of melancholic and feminine nature, for it is cold and dry.
20 So it is good [to sow];
21 and all that should come of the earth;
22 for in all the [earthy] signs -- as Capricorn and [the rest] -- it is good to drink whatever [...].
23 It is also good to take a wife;
24 and...

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 24v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

(end of Virgo; then Libra, red heading Von dem zaichen der Waugen)

1 …mit jungkfrowen, wan si unfruchtbar werden, oder geberen, so gebiret si doch mit vil.

2 Es ist ouch gut anzeheben, weg machen, und nauch kaufmanschatz ze faren gegen dem taile der welte,

3 das da haisset **mittertag**.

4 Es ist ouch gut anzehebend und wurken, was man mit fürs wirken sol.

5 Es ist bös artzmen an den glidern des libs, dar über das zaichen gewalt haut;

6 und ist bös die füss artzmen.

7 ¶ Das zaichen git kalt, frische zit und trucken;

8 und wande by der erden, und wolken in den lüfften;

9 [ohne dass?] es dem mit ain weng regnet.

10 Das tüt es an sinem uffgange.

11 Wer under dem zaichen geboren wirt, der gewinnet ain brait antlütz, und ain erb[er]s.

12 Er wirt ouch güttig und manhafftig.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

13 Er haut ouch ainen waitten mund;
14 und sind jme die lefsten nit ze dicke, noch ze dünne;
15 und haut ain gemischte varbe, [weder] ze schwartz noch ze wisse;
16 und ist zügenaigt dem planeten **Jupiter** mit siner nature und krafft;
17 und ist **Mellancolice** nature.
18 ¶ **Von dem zaichen der Waugen**.
19 [blue D] Die Wauge, das zaichen haut ouch inderthalb des nabels [herab], gegen dem gemächte;
20 die in[n]eren gelider, als die grosse[n] darme, und das gemächte, und die hufft;
21 und allen jren siechtagen.
22 ¶ Wen dü mön ist in der Wauge, das am zaichen ist von **Occident**, und am wandelbar[en] zaichen ist;
23 das ouch lüftes, blutes und mannes nature ist;
24 wan es warm und füchte ist.
25 So ist [es] gut weg anzevahen, und nauch kaufmanschatz faren gegen dem taile…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 ...[to deal] with women, for they become [fruitful].
2 Those born [under it] are blooded, yet but moderately.
3 It is good to keep [...];
4 to engage in trade toward the part called the South.
5 It is also good to begin and to travel, whatever should be worked with fire.
6 It is bad to [treat] the members of the body over which the sign has power.
7 Whoever is born under this sign gets a [comely] face;
8 and in the end he becomes kindly, and [manly];
9 he has a [...] mouth;
10 the lips neither too thick nor too thin;
11 and in disposition [neither] too dark nor too fair;
12 and he is assigned to the planet Jupiter[?] in nature and power, and is of melancholic nature.
13 Of the sign of the Balance (Libra).
14 The Scales hold likewise [the part] above the navel, toward the genitals;
15 the [loins];
16 the great [veins?];
17 and all their afflictions.
18 When the moon is in Libra, which is of the Occident [West], and of the movable signs;
19 which is of airy [matter];
20 and of masculine nature, for it is warm and moist.
21 So it is good...

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 25r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Libra (roundel: a balance/scales)

…der woelte[?] haisset **Occident** oder woelten[?];
und ist gut haben laussen;
und alt[?];
das [an]ze-heben und thün, das d[er] erden zü-gehöret;
und was von erden komet, als ober brunnen und [s]eyen[?];
und semliche dings;
und was langbroven sin sol.
¶ Das zaichen ist warm und füchte;
und [s]üsse[?];
gut;
und underlan[?] varen[?].
Es [ist] gut ouch [s]üllen wind[?];
so dü mön in der jme ist;
darumb ist [es] dem gut[en] offt den wasser ze faren;
und das tüt es an sinem uffgange.
¶ Wer under den zaichen geboren wirt, der gewinnt[?] ain gelückes antlits;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

17 ain mittel gestalt;
18 und woet er ain man, so woet er den frowen lieb;
19 und ist es ain frowe, so woet si den mannen lieb.
20 Ei sind ouch ehe[?] sengar sienng[?];
21 und [s]aitenspiler;
22 und liebhaber;
23 ei sind ouch gerne fröli[ch];
24 und des spils maist[er];
25 und je mit will;
26 und [ihr] gelüste ist vil an [s]aitenspil;
27 und an gewande.
28 Ei sind ouch sin [s]elber wandel[?];
29 und die under dem zaichen geboren werden, das sind schön[e] lüte und menschen;
30 und sind dick[?] krut[?] under den ougen;
31 und hüpsche;
32 und hand ain bain grösser dene das ander;
33 und sind ouch vil kündig.
34 ¶ Diß zaichen ist zügenaut den…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

...the part called Occident [West];
and it is good to let blood;
and [to begin] and do what belongs to the earth, and what comes of the earth -- as wells and [springs] and such things;
and what should be lasting.
This sign is warm and moist;
and good;
and [for travel].
It is good [for fair wind?] while the moon is in it;
therefore it is often good to travel by water;
the same at its rising.
Whoever is born under this sign gets a fortunate face;
a middling stature;
and if he is a man, he is dear to women, and if a woman, dear to men.
They are also singers, string-players and lovers;
they are gladly merry, masters of the game, and willing;
their delight is much in string-music and in fine dress.
They are also handsome people, with [marks] beneath the eyes;
comely;
and they have one leg bigger than the other;
and are very clever.
This sign is assigned to...

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 25v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

(end of Libra; then Scorpio, roundel: a scorpion; red heading Von dem zaichen des Tharauts · Scorpio)

1 …planeten **Venus** mit siner nature und krafft;
2 und gliche[t] sich ouch dem **Sangwineus**.
3 ¶ **Von dem zaichen des [Scorpions] · Scorpio.** [red D] Der Scorpion haut an des menschen geliden die schame,
4 an den frowen und an mannen;
5 und was zü der schame gehöret;
6 den stain;
7 und in den ougen, und der ougen trübe;
8 und das griesse, das im der blauter wirt;
9 und den usgang;
10 und söliche siechtagen.
11 ¶ Wenn dü mön in den zaichen ist **Scorpio**, das am vestes gauchen ist und stüt;
12 und das gewalt haut über das tail, das da haisset **Septemtrio** oder Norden;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

13 das ouch wasser-flegmaticus und frowen natur ist, wan es bald und füchte ist.

14 So ist [es] mit gut laussen, wan dü mön in den selben zaichen ist;

15 es ist [es] ongelück-hafft an jnen[?];

16 alle [a]rzme ist dem gut ze nemen;

17 und anders müzig;

18 es ist mit gut ze gande;

19 aber woelte ze gande, noch wönne, nach[?] bürgen[?];

20 uff stigen ouch in [s]chiffe ze gande;

21 ouch ist böse regmen[?] zü der ge[ge]ne da es gewalt über haut.

22 ¶ Das selb sol man wissen, es es offt gaut, als…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 ...the planet Venus in nature and power;
2 and it resembles the sanguine [type].
3 Of the sign of the Scorpion (Scorpio).
4 The Scorpion holds, among the members of man, the genitals, in women and in men;
5 and whatever belongs to the genitals;
6 the [...];
7 and what is in the bladder;
8 and the stool;
9 and [such, every fourth?] day.
10 When the moon is in Scorpio, which is of the fixed signs, and has power over the part called Septemtrio [North];
11 which is of watery-phlegmatic and feminine nature, for it is cold and moist.
12 So it is not good to let blood while the moon is in this sign;
13 it is unlucky [for them];
14 all medicine is good to take, and otherwise be idle;
15 it is not good to travel;
16 nor to [seek a dwelling], nor [sureties];
17 nor to board a ship to go [by water];
18 it is also bad to [treat] the region over which it has power.
19 This same one should know, that it often goes [thus], as...

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 26r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

(end of Scorpio; then Sagittarius, roundel: an archer; red heading Von dem zaichen des Schutzen · Sagittarius)

1 …so dü mön der jme ist.

2 Der under den zaichen geboren wirt, der ist klain und mager libe, und underlan wiß;

3 er haut ouch ain klain[es] [s]penges antlüte;

4 und klain ougen;

5 lenge klain füße.

6 Ei sind ouch vestes mütes;

7 und weniges libe;

8 gelück-hafftig;

9 behalt-hafftig[?];

10 unbürusge[?];

11 und gormiges mütes.

12 Das zaichen ist zügenaut der planeta die da haisset **Luna**[?] mit jr nature;

13 und ist das **flegmaticus**[?] art, als hie nauch geschriben ist.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

14 ¶ **Von dem zaichen des Schutzen · Sagitta[rius].** [blue D] Der Schütze haut an des menschen geliden die [r]obrige gelidern;

15 als man etwan siget aime menschen, den haut [s]eges[?] vom [g]er[?] an ainer hand;

16 und an der andern auch [s]eges;

17 und [s]eges vom-er[?].

18 Er haut ouch die von natürliche grosse der gelidern.

19 Er haut ouch semliche gelid[er], als du amer, aim vomes[?];

20 oder amer hande ze wenig hette, von gebürt, oder von gesicht;

21 er haut ouch den gebresten, der da nach…

TRANSLATION

1 …while the moon is in it.

2 Whoever is born under this sign is small and lean of body, and pale beneath;

3 he also has a small narrow face, small eyes, and long small feet.

4 They are also firm of spirit, slight of body, fortunate, [retentive?], [un-…?], and of an irascible temper.

5 This sign is assigned by its nature to the planet called **Luna [the Moon]**[?],

6 and is of the **phlegmatic** kind, as is written hereafter.

7 ¶ **Of the sign of the Archer (Sagittarius).** The Archer holds, among the members of the human body,

8 the upper members;

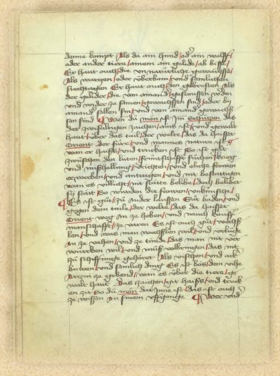
9 as one sometimes sees in a person who has [an injury] from an arrow on one hand,

10 and on the other too… He also governs the natural size of the limbs.

11 He also governs such limbs as in one who has too little of a [finger] or a hand, from birth or by mischance;

12 he also governs the affliction that thereafter…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 26v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Sagittarius (roundel: an archer drawing a bow)

…darme kompt;
als da ain hund od[er] ain woelf;
oder ander tiere samen am gelid ab bisse.
Er haut ouch die von natürliche gewächse;
als warzen;
oder röberbam[?];
und semlichen siechtagen.
Er haut ouch den gebresten, als der gelider die von ainander [s]chossen werden,
und von der ze [s]amen gewachssen sind;
oder by ainander [s]ellen sin;
und von ainander gewachssen sind.
¶ Wan dü mön ist im **Sagittarius**, die der zwaivaltigen zaichen aim ist, und gewalt haut über das tail,
der woelte[?] das da haisset **Orient**, der füre und mannes nature ist, wan er haisse und trucken ist.
So ist [es] gut wandlen den luten;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

15 kuntschafft süchen;
16 krieg und mischellung[?] richten;
17 und [eh]liche frowen erwerben;
18 und antwurten[?];
19 und mit besetzigen[?];
20 wan es willige mit stäte beliebe;
21 doch beliebet si stät.
22 So wonden die frowen;
23 unbürusge[?].
24 ¶ Es ist gut zü ander[?] laussen;
25 gut baden;
26 und gegen dem taile, der woelte[?] das da haisset **Orient**, weg an ze-haben;
27 und nauch kauffmanschafft ze varen.
28 Es ist ouch gut wachsfellen[?];
29 und was man waugschlou[?] wil;
30 und woelige an ze-nahen[?];
31 und ze trincken.
32 … Es ist bös den regmen[?], wan ze gebend da es röber[?] die tiere gewalt haut.
33 Das zaichen ist haisse und trucken;
34 so dü mön der jme ist;
35 das ist ouch ze wissen an sinem uffgange.
36 ¶ Wer und[er]…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…it comes about;
as when a dog or a wolf, or another beast, bites off a limb.
He also governs natural growths, such as warts, or [tumours], and such maladies.
He governs too the affliction whereby limbs are [shot/torn] apart, or grown together,
or should be joined and have grown apart.
¶ When the moon is in **Sagittarius** — which is one of the "two-fold" (bicorporeal) signs,
and has power over the part called the **East** (a fire-sign of masculine nature,
for it is hot and dry) — then it is good to travel about among people;
to seek acquaintance;
to settle war and discord;
to win a spouse;
… for what is willingly [begun] would remain with constancy.
¶ It is good to let blood;
good to bathe;
and to begin a journey toward the East, and to travel for trade.
It is also good to [fell timber?], and whatever one will [undertake], and to begin willingly, and to drink.
… It is bad to begin bloodletting where the [beasts] have power.
The sign is hot and dry, while the moon is in it;
this too is to be noted at its rising.
¶ Whoever [is born] under…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 27r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

(end of Sagittarius; then Capricorn, roundel: a horned goat/ibex; red heading Von dem zaichen des Stainbockes · Capricornus)

1 …dem zaichen geboren wirt, der ist roß bezaut[?];
2 net[?] mit den zaichen die da vorgenant sind;
3 darzü ist er röselet[?];
4 rout;
5 und ronferoi[?];
6 und haut die vordern zwen zene brait in dem mund, dene die andern.
7 Das zaichen ist zügenaut mit siner nature **Mercurio**[?];
8 und gliche[t] sich dem **Colericus**.
9 ¶ **Von dem zaichen des Stainbockes · Cap[ricornus].** [red A] Apricornus,
10 das zaichen haut an des menschen geliden die knie;
11 und [s]o adern;
12 und die prestange[?].
13 ¶ Wenne dü mön ist in dem zaichen **Capricornus**, das gewalt haut über [das tail], der woelte[?];

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

14 das ouch…

TRANSLATION

1 …born under this sign is quick[ly] [marked?] with the aforesaid signs;

2 moreover he is [ruddy], red, and […], and has the two front teeth broad in the mouth, more so than the others.

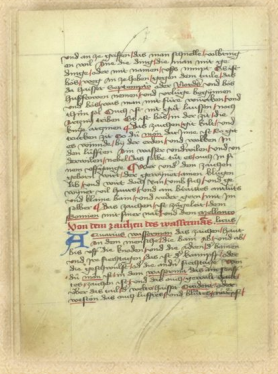
3 This sign is assigned by its nature to **Mercury**[?], and resembles the **choleric** type.

4 ¶ **Of the sign of the Ibex (Capricorn).** Capricorn holds, among the members of the human body, the **knees**,

5 and the veins there, and their afflictions.

6 ¶ When the moon is in the sign **Capricorn**, which has power over [the part] called…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 27v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Capricorn (continued); then Aquarius (red heading Von dem zaichen des Wassermans · Aquarius)

1 …und an ze-haissen, das man schnelle volbringe;
2 an wil;
3 ane die ding, die man ze [d]inge[?];
4 oder die ding, die man mit namen offt nimmt.
5 Es ist böse … an ze-haben gegen dem taile, das da haisset **Septemtrio**;
6 und bös [eh]liche frowen nemen;
7 und woelige beginnen[?];
8 und bös was man mit fürs wirken sol und thün sol.
9 Aug ist [es] mit gut laussen;
10 noch regmen[?] triben.
11 Es ist bös in der zit die knie regmen[?].
12 ¶ Das zaichen ist bald und trucken;
13 es dü mön der jme ist;
14 es ist [es] gut, es woinde[?] by der erden, und walten in den lüfften wasser;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

und wilen;
und von trawnten[?] nebel.
Das selbe tüt es ouch in sinem uffgange.
¶ Wer under dem zaichen geboren wirt, der gewinnet ainen klugen [list];
und wirt doch [verschlossen?] umb sich;
und gewinnet vil hares;
und ain braites antlüts;
und klaine bain;
und redet geren mit jm selber.
¶ Das zaichen ist zügenaut dem **Sonnen** mit siner nature;
und dem **Mellanco-**.
¶ **Von dem zaichen des Wassermans · Aqua[rius].** [blue A] Aquarius, Wasserman,
das zaichen haut an dem menschen [g]elider die bain, ab bis uff die knöden;
und die [a]dern d[er] beinen;
und jre prestange, das ist d[er] kampfes;
oder die geschwulst;
als die andern prestage.
¶ Wan dü mön in dem zaichen Wasserman ist, und [es] ouch gewalt haut über das tail,
aber das trüb[e] woder[?] haisset **Occident**;
das ouch lüftes und blutes…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …and to begin what one would quickly complete;
2 except for things that one [delays?], or things one often [takes/uses].
3 It is bad to begin anything toward the part called the **North**;
4 bad to take a spouse;
5 bad to begin willingly;
6 and bad whatever one would work with fire.
7 Also it is [not?] good to let blood, nor to practise [bloodletting].
8 It is bad at this time to [treat] the knees.
9 ¶ The sign is cold and dry;
10 while the moon is in it;
11 … water wells by the earth and rolls in the airs, and [there is] mist.
12 The same it does at its rising.
13 ¶ Whoever is born under this sign [has] a clever body;
14 grows much hair and a broad face …;
15 and becomes familiar/self-contained.
16 ¶ The sign is assigned by its nature to **the Sun** (so the manuscript;
17 the doctrinal ruler of Capricorn is **Saturn** — see note above) and to the **melancholic** type.
18 ¶ **Of the sign of the Waterman (Aquarius).** Aquarius, the Waterman,
19 holds among the members of the body the **legs, down to the ankles**, and the veins of the legs,
20 and their afflictions — that is cramps, or swelling, like the other ailments.
21 ¶ When the moon is in Aquarius, which has power over the part called the **West** (an airy and blood[y] sign)…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

EDITORIAL NOTE

Editorial note — anomalous planet-rulers (verified at the image). This treatise gives each sign a planet and a complexion. The manuscript here assigns **Capricorn → the Sun ("Sonnen")** and, on f. 28r, **Aquarius → Jupiter**. Both readings were re-checked against a zoomed image and are what the scribe actually wrote (not a misread abbreviation of "Saturnus"). They nonetheless contradict standard domicile doctrine, in which **Saturn** is lord of *both* Capricorn and Aquarius — almost certainly a corruption in the 1443 exemplar (Capricorn and Aquarius being Saturn's two houses). The **complexions are standard** (Capricorn melancholic, Aquarius sanguine), which suggests only the planet-names were corrupted. Flagged for collation against Parent 1988.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 28r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Aquarius (roundel: a youth pouring water; red heading Aquarius); then Pisces (red heading Von dem zaichen des Visches)

…wan es haisse und füchte ist.
So ist [es] gut an hüse buwen;
[eh]liche frowen nemen;
oder ander[e] grosse ding ze empfahen.
Gut zü der ander laussen;
und alle ding an ze-heben, die man woenig[?] wil machen;
… und alles das an griffen, das man schnelle volbringen.
Das zaichen, so dü mön der jme ist:
gut[en] wind;
und der ist gut uff wasser varen.
¶ Wer under dem zaichen geboren woet, der gewirmet ain hauchmütigen mütes;
… und [ist] aine roberitusen[?] mütes;
und leoret[?];
und ist zügenaut zü hauchfart;
der ist auch beschaiden;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

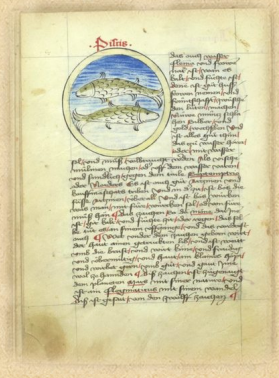
16 und gütige von woisen.
17 Ei sind ouch, die under dem zaichen geboren woer, die schöne lüt;
18 rount den antlitt;
19 und ga-bont[?] am bain grösser denne das ander;
20 und sind ouch vil kündig.
21 Diß zaichen ist zügenaut dem planeten **Jupiter** [doktrinell wäre **Saturn** der Herr des Wassermanns — s.
22 Anmerkung zu f.
23 27v] mit siner nature;
24 und dem **Sangwineus**.
25 ¶ **Von dem zaichen des Visches**.
26 [red P] Pisces, der Vische, haut das zaichen an dem menschen die füsse, gar jm ab;
27 und jre prestage.
28 ¶ Wäne dü mön in dem Vische ist, das ouch gewalt haut über das taile,
29 der woelte[?] das da haisset **Septemtrio** oder Norden…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…for it is hot and moist.
So it is good to build houses, take a spouse, or undertake other great matters.
Good to let blood;
and good to begin all things meant to [last only] a short while;
… and to set about all that one would quickly complete.
With this sign, while the moon is in it:
good wind, and good to travel by water.
¶ Whoever is born under this sign gets a haughty, proud spirit … of an overbearing temper;
yet [such a one] is also modest, and kindly in a wise way.
Those born under this sign are handsome people, round of face, with one leg bigger than the other,
and are also very clever.
This sign is assigned by its nature to the planet **Jupiter** (so the manuscript;
the doctrinal ruler of Aquarius is **Saturn** — see note at f.
27v) and to the **sanguine** type.
¶ **Of the sign of the Fishes (Pisces).** Pisces, the Fishes, holds among the human members the **feet**,
all the way down, and their afflictions.
¶ When the moon is in Pisces, which has power over the part called the **North** (Septemtrio)…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 28v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Pisces (roundel: two fish; red heading Pisces) — end of the melothesia

1 …das ouch wasser-flema und frowen nat[ur] ist, wan es bald und füchte ist.
2 Dene ist [es] gut [eh]liche frowen nemen;
3 und kondesschafft grüsse den lüten machen;
4 minne[?];
5 münz[?] [s]egla[?];
6 und gold woechslen;
7 und ist alles gut thün, das gut wasser hörti[?];
8 oder mit wasser sol;
9 und müß volbraucht woeden;
10 als woisge mülinen machen;
11 … roß uff dem wasser varen;
12 und semlich;
13 gegen dem taile oder Norden, **Septemtrio**.
14 Es ist auch gut … kauffmanschatz triben;
15 … bös die füsse regmen[?];
16 überall;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

und ist bös … was man mit fürs wirken sol;
oder von füre muß gan.
¶ Das zaichen, es dü mön der jme ist:
gut bald und füchte gut;
oder der regen;
das tüt es an sinem uffgange;
und das woederlost ouch.
¶ Wer under dem zaichen geboren woet, der haut ainen gedruckten lib;
und woelt die brust;
und woet kime[?];
und froucht[?];
und übermütrist;
und haut ain klaines höpt;
und woebat[?] grön[?] romb gut;
und gaut jme woel.
¶ Diß zaichen ist zügenaut dem planeten **Jovis** mit siner nature;
und ist ain **flegmaticus** mit sinem woandel.
¶ **Diß ist gesait von den zwölff zaichen.** ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…which is of watery-phlegmatic and feminine nature, for it is cold and moist.

Therefore it is good to take a spouse;

to make acquaintance and greeting among people;

[love?];

to [coin/exchange] money and gold;

and it is good to do all that requires good water or must be done with water — such as building mills wisely,

travelling by water, and the like — toward the part [called] North, **Septemtrio**.

It is also good to … engage in trade;

… bad to [treat] the feet anywhere;

and bad [to do] whatever one would work with fire, or that must pass through fire.

¶ The sign, while the moon is in it:

good, cold and moist;

good for rain;

this it does at its rising, and so the weather.

¶ Whoever is born under this sign has a stocky body, and broad of chest;

and is [bold] and overbold;

and has a small head …;

and it goes well with him.

¶ This sign is assigned by its nature to the planet **Jupiter (Jovis)**, and is phlegmatic in its course.

¶ **This has been said of the twelve signs.** ¶ > End of the melothesia (f.

19r–28v). The twelve zodiac chapters are now transcribed in full:

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

22 each gives the body-part(s) the sign rules, the bloodletting/activity rules while the moon stands there,

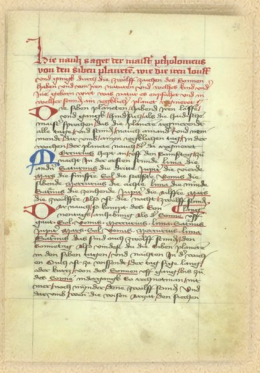
23 the sign's element/complexion and ruling planet, and the physiognomy of those born under it.

EDITORIAL NOTE

End of the melothesia (f. 19r–28v). The twelve zodiac chapters are now transcribed in full: each gives the body-part(s) the sign rules, the bloodletting/activity rules while the moon stands there, the sign's element/complexion and ruling planet, and the physiognomy of those born under it.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

The Seven Planets



folio 29r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Introduction to the planets (Ptolemy) + the planetary hours

[1] [red] Die nauh saget der maist[er] Ptholomeus von den siben planeten,

[2] wie die iren louff und gengs durch die zwölff zaichen des hi[m]els haben, und von iren naturen,

[3] und welhes kind, und wie geboren wirt, was nature es empfahet,

[4] und in welher stund ain yeglich planet regnieret. ¶ [blue D] Die siben planeten habend iren löuff und gengs,

[5] als die guldin ze-maist[er] sprachen, das die planeten regnierent alle tage und stund, manch ainander …;

[6] dar umb amen [yeglichen] tag in der wochen der planeten nauch da regnieret.

[7] ¶ [blue M] Mercurius hept an recht den Samstag ze nacht, in der ersten stund;

[8] Luna die ander, Saturnus die dritte, Jupiter die vierde, Mars die fünffte, Sol die sechste, Venus die sibende,

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

9 Mercurius die achte, Luna die nünde, Saturnus die zehende, Jupiter die ailffte, Mars die zwölffte.

10 Als ist die nacht zwölff stund.

11 ¶ [blue D] Der [tag] so kompt des Son[tags];

12 und mentags angehebt, als der Sonne recht gaut:

13 Sol, Venus, Mercurius, Luna, Saturnus, Jupiter, Mars;

14 Sol, Venus, Mercurius, Luna, Saturnus — das sind auch zwölff stund den Sonentag.

15 Also vindest du die siben planeten in den siben tagen und nachten in d[er] wochen.

16 Es ist ze wissende, der tag sye lang oder kurz, von der Sonnen uffgang bis zü der Sonne[n] nidergang;

17 es rechnet man mer noch minder dene zwölff stund.

18 Und dar umb, waun die wisen …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

[1] [red] Hereafter Master Ptolemy tells of the seven planets — how they have their course and movement through the twelve signs of heaven, and of their natures;

[2] and what child, born in what way, receives what nature;

[3] and in which hour each planet rules. ¶ The seven planets have their course and movement,

[4] as the learned masters say, so that the planets rule every day and hour, each in turn;

[5] therefore each day of the week is ruled according to its planet.

[6] ¶ **Mercury** begins right on **Saturday night, in the first hour**;

[7] the **Moon** the second, **Saturn** the third, **Jupiter** the fourth, **Mars** the fifth,

[8] the **Sun** the sixth, **Venus** the seventh, **Mercury** the eighth, the **Moon** the ninth,

[9] **Saturn** the tenth, **Jupiter** the eleventh, **Mars** the twelfth — thus the night is twelve hours.

[10] ¶ The day then comes on Sunday;

[11] begun on Monday as the Sun duly rises:

[12] Sun, Venus, Mercury, Moon, Saturn, Jupiter, Mars;

[13] Sun, Venus, Mercury, Moon, Saturn — these too are the twelve hours of Sunday.

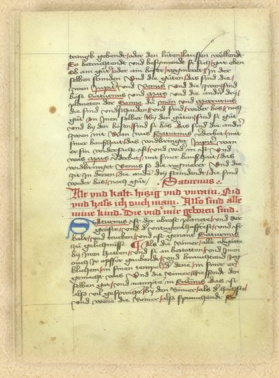
[14] Thus you find the seven planets across the seven days and nights of the week.

[15] Know that, whether the day be long or short, from sunrise to sunset,

[16] one reckons more or fewer than twelve [equal] hours;

[17] and therefore, when the wise…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 29v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

(end of the planetary-hours intro; then Saturn begins, red heading Saturnus)

1 …[die wisen / prelaten rechnen die siben planeten-stunden] … woeder böse noch gut.

2 ¶ [red] **Saturnus.** ¶ [Der Planet spricht:] Hie[?] und kalt-hizig[?] und unru[w]ig … bin ich auch, main ich;

3 also sind alle mine kind, die under mir geboren sind.

4 ¶ [S] Saturnus ist der obrost planet, und der grössest, und höchst;

5 und ist kaltes und truckens;

6 und ist genemt Saturnus … ¶ [Die Römer ehrten ihn] … alte lüte by [iren] … und … opfer gauben[?];

7 und brauchtend … sinen tempel;

8 … das ist [siben?] … in Latine, das ist als vil gesprochen …;

9 … die Römer … so…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …[the wise/prelates reckon the seven planetary hours]… neither bad nor good.

2 ¶ **Saturn.** ¶ [The planet speaks:] "Cold-hot[?] and restless … am I too, I mean;

3 and so are all my children who are born under me." ¶ Saturn is the highest planet, and the greatest and loftiest;

4 and is cold and dry;

5 and is named Saturn … ¶ [The Romans honoured him with] … old people … and brought offerings … [to] his temple;

6 … that is [seven?] … in Latin, which means as much as …;

7 … the Romans … so…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 30r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Saturn (figure: an old man with a sickle and a spade, above his houses Capricorn and Aquarius)

[E]ss in dem obrosten tröne des himels, als das er [s]eßt über ander[e] götte, und in allem gott zü gebietten.

Und dar omb so nampten in die Römer **Saturnus** als amen obrosten gott;

und warumb?

si … romb woolten büten;

so tetten si jar grousse gebett;

und tettend das ain jaure romb …;

und ge-sprangonts[?];

das er über alle götte erhöiget wäre.

Und der romb so sölte man in so vil guttes zimluge bitten;

wan der oberst gott woelle mer guttes und langs gebetten woerden, denne die andern götte alle sampt.

Und was das im roberm[?]itte den er-san[?];

in selber hatte, dar omb er erhöit was ober ander götte;

denne, wan in die Römer enpflugen an…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 He [sits] in the highest throne of heaven, so that he sits above the other gods,

2 and commands in all things like a god.

3 And therefore the Romans named him **Saturn** as a highest god.

4 And why?

5 They wished to worship [him];

6 so each year they made great prayers, and did this all year round …;

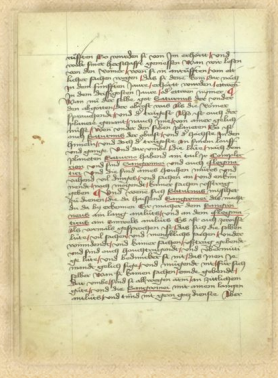
7 and besought that he be exalted above all gods.

8 And therefore one should fittingly entreat him for much good,

9 for the highest god wishes to be prayed to with much and long prayer, more than all the other gods together.

10 And whatever [power] he had in himself, for which he was exalted above the other gods — for when the Romans called upon him…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 30v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Saturn (continued): the planet's exaltation and the "children of Saturn"

…so wonder si von jm erhöit;
und woelt sin[er] hochgesetzt gemessen.
Wan wir lesen von den Römer[n], woen si im ennrissen[?] von ettlicher sachen weren,
das si dene kom der nauch in dem fünfften jaure erhöit;
… in dem drissigosten jaure;
… etwan nymer.
¶ Wan mit der selbe[n] gat Saturnus, der wonder den abgötten der obrost was, als die Römer sprauchende;
… Als ist auch der planete genant … Wan wonder den siben planeten so [s]at auch Saturnus der obrost und der höigste in den himelin;
und doch der traist[ost] an sinen louff und gauns.
Und darumb die lüte nauch den planeten Saturnus habend am tail ze complexion;
und sind **Sangwinei** und auch flegma-tici.
Und die sind aines hohen mütes …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

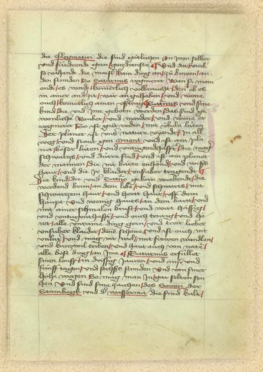
TRANSLATION

1 …so he was exalted by him, and would enjoy his high station.
2 For we read of the Romans that when they [contended with] him in certain matters, then afterwards,
3 in the fifth year, [he was] exalted;
4 … in the thirtieth year;
5 … never[?].
6 ¶ For with the same goes Saturn, who among the [pagan] gods was the highest, as the Romans said;
7 … so too is the planet named … For among the seven planets Saturn too sits highest and loftiest in the heavens,
8 and yet is the slowest in his course, and wholly so.
9 And therefore people [born] under the planet Saturn share in part his complexion,
10 and are [melancholic?] and also phlegmatic;
11 and these are of one disposition …

EDITORIAL NOTE

Editorial note — "Sangwinei", not "Melancolici" (verified at the image). The manuscript here says Saturn's children "sind **Sangwinei** und auch flegmatici." The underlined Latin word reads *Sangwinei* (and recurs), **not** *Melancolici*, even though Saturn is doctrinally the melancholic planet. The reading is confirmed by the sentence that immediately follows, which contrasts how Saturn shapes the face of the **sanguine** man (a long face) versus the **phlegmatic** (a round face) — i.e. the passage sorts Saturn's people into sanguine/phlegmatic types, not melancholic. Flagged for collation against Parent 1988.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 31r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Saturn (continued): trades and physiognomy of Saturn's children

…[so] woare kommerlich volbraucht, den[n] ob es in amer arbait woar an-gehaben… ¶ **Saturnus** und sine kind,

die jme geboren woerden, das sind gewoonlich [r]aubex und mordex;

und woenn er [r]egniret, [s]o ist [es] böse woerden mit [r]obeln lüten.

¶ Der **planet** ist von nature [boese?] in all woeg, und [s]taut gen Orient,

und ist am pla[net]… ¶ …[Saturns kind] den lib … mit [s]warzen haut off dem houpt;

und woenig haut an dem bart;

und mit amer [s]chmalen brust;

… und [ist] auch trawrigt;

und trait lieber [s]onsuber klaider, dene [s]chöne;

und ist auch mit [s]onlust, und mag nit wol mit frowen wandlen und kurzwil triben;

und haut auch von nature … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …it would be wearily accomplished, [more] than if it had been taken up as [one continuous] labour… ¶ **Saturn** and his children, those born to him, are commonly **thievish and murderous**;

2 and when he reigns, things turn ill with wicked people.

3 ¶ The **planet** [Saturn] is by nature [malefic] in every way;

4 it stands toward the **Orient**, and is a pla[net]… ¶ …[Saturn's child has] the body … with **black hair** on the head;

5 and **little hair on the beard**;

6 and a **narrow chest**;

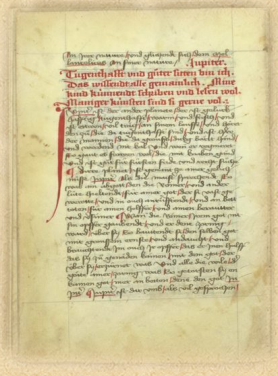
7 … and is also **sorrowful** [melancholy];

8 and would rather wear **shabby clothes** than fine ones;

9 and is full of **sullen displeasure**, and deals poorly with women and with making merry;

10 and has by nature … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 31v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

(end of Saturn; then Jupiter begins: first-person verse + prose)

…an [s]iner nature;
und gliessend sich dem [Mellancolicus?] … an siner nature.
¶ [red] **Jupiter.** ¶ [Vers:] Tugenthafft und gütter sitten bin ich.
Das wissendt alle gemainlich.
Mine kind künnendt schriben und lesen wol.
Mancher künsten sind si gerne vol. ¶ [blue J] Jupiter ist der ander planete;
der ist gelück-hafftig, tugenthafft und süsse;
… die der mannen, die da grosse[s] [glück] …;
und werdend …;
wan er regnieret, so gaut es frowen wol die mit knaben sind;
und ist [günstig] für fürsten und reiche lüte.
¶ Diss planete[n] … ze amer gehugnisse Jupiter, als die maist[er] sprachend:
es war am abgott den die Römer und ander[e] lüte hieltend für amen got;
… für amen helffer;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

15 und an betten[?] für amen helffer …

TRANSLATION

1 …in its nature;
2 and they resemble the [melancholic?] … in its nature.
3 ¶ **Jupiter.** ¶ [The planet speaks:] "Virtuous and of good manners am I.
4 Know it, all of you together.
5 My children can write and read well;
6 they are gladly full of many arts." ¶ Jupiter is the second planet;
7 he is fortunate, virtuous and mild;
8 … [the planet] of men who [win] great [fortune];
9 … when he rules, it goes well with women who are with child;
10 and he is favourable for princes and rich folk.
11 ¶ This planet they named, in memory, Jupiter, as the masters said:
12 he was a [pagan] god whom the Romans and other people held for a god;
13 … as a helper;
14 and they worshipped [him] as a helper …

EDITORIAL NOTE

(Read with green-channel + CLAHE; the verse is high-confidence — a clear demonstration that the restoration recovers faded black-ink prose.)

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 32r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Jupiter (figure: a crowned king with a raised sword holding a severed head, above his houses Pisces and Sagittarius)

1 Als am helffer;
2 und [s]timer[?] nauch der Römer sitten.
3 Wan als die Römer sprach[en];
4 und [s]o galt[?] er sinen sun Saturnus;
5 so er besasse den oberston tröne in jm himel-rich;
6 und darumb so rüschtend in die Römer an als amen helffer.
7 Und darumb Jupiter haut auch sin complexion und sinen lauff mit den lüten;
8 da har stand[?] complexes[?] … ¶ So es der selben … nauch jrem willen, es helffende;
9 die den man[?] und andern lüten [r]aust[?];
10 und morgend … arbaiten durch der lüten willen;
11 und … mit jnen haben.
12 Aber von oberm[?] … man sell[en][?];
13 es mögen si nieman mit [un]gezetzm[?];
14 und ze lieb bewisen;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

15 man bitte si, [so] den enpflugen.
16 ¶ Und…

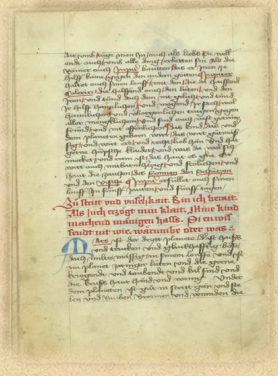
TRANSLATION

1 As a helper, after the Roman custom.
2 For as the Romans said, [Jupiter] surpassed[?] his son Saturn when he took the highest throne in the heaven-kingdom;
3 and therefore the Romans invoked him as a helper.
4 And therefore Jupiter too has his complexion and his course among people;
5 from him stem [helpful dispositions] … ¶ So [his children], according to their will, are helping;
6 they [aid] men and other folk;
7 and in the morning … work for people's sake;
8 and … deal with them.
9 … they would [help] everyone and show kindness;
10 let one but ask them, [and] then they answer the call.
11 ¶ And…

EDITORIAL NOTE

(Read with the green-channel + CLAHE restoration; legibility good.)

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 32v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Jupiter's "children" (end); then Mars begins (verse + prose)

…darumb sücht man in souch als liebe;
si wöllend auch souch alle ding[?] erbetten sin;
als die Römer ouch jnen bautten, das er man ze hilff kome gegen den andern göttern.
¶ Jupiter habet auch sinen lauff mit den, die da [planieren?];
die helffend ouch den lüten … und sind doch dem mit gelück;
und sind ye hilff[?] gemainlichen;
und mögend jr sach[en] wol … tragen gegen aller menschlichen;
und sind auch vast-gettrüw, fromb, und … offenlichen.
Das sind die, [die unter] dem planeten geboren wirt:
das wirt gümäss, fri, und … recht;
… und [trägt] gerne grosse[?] klaider … und [ist] auch … gschyt und frölichen … ¶ Jupiter erfüllet auch sinen lauff in fünff jauren und fünff tagen.
¶ [red] **Mars.** ¶ [Vers:] Zü Stritt und unselikait bin ich berait.
Als sich erzögt min klait.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

14 Mine kind machend mänigen hass.
15 Si ennwissendt nit wie, warumbe oder was. ¶ [M] Mars ist der drit[t] planete;
16 der ist haisse und trucken;
17 und flück-hafftig[?];
18 böse;
19 … und ist am planet zorniger lüten;
20 … und die kurtze haut hand, und woenig.
21 ¶ Und der dem planeten ist:
22 ze in stritt gän;
23 und stelen;
24 und rauben;
25 brennen;
26 und vonmiden[?] die …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …therefore one seeks him as a friend;
2 and they too wish all things to be won by entreaty;
3 as the Romans also built [temples] to them, so that he might come to one's help against the other gods.
4 ¶ Jupiter also has his course with those who [govern/plan];
5 they help people … and are favoured with fortune;
6 and are ever helpful in general;
7 and bear their affairs well toward all people;
8 and are also very faithful, pious, and open.
9 These are they born under this planet:
10 [such a one] becomes seemly, free, and just;
11 … gladly [wears] fine clothes …;
12 and is also clever and cheerful … ¶ Jupiter completes his course in five years and five days.
13 ¶ **Mars.** ¶ [The planet speaks:] "For strife and misfortune I am ready, as my garment shows.
14 My children make much hatred — they know not how, why, or what." ¶ Mars is the third planet;
15 he is hot and dry, [violent and] malefic;
16 … and is the planet of angry people;
17 … who have short hair, and little of it.
18 ¶ And whoever belongs to this planet [is inclined] to go to war, to steal, to rob, to burn, and [to …] …

EDITORIAL NOTE

(Read with flatten+CLAHE; the Mars verse is high-confidence.)

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 33r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Mars (figure: an armoured warrior with banner/lance and flames, above his houses Aries and Scorpio)

1 …lüte … am bösesten[?];
2 … menschen son[?] … zü amer gelichnisse … mer von den ongelücksten[?];
3 was geraunt[?] am gotte des strites;
4 und woen die böse[n] … striten, so müssen si **Mars** … und kriegtten in;
5 opffer;
6 an amen … ¶ …[s]o si den striten woolten, und als die maist[er] sprauchende, so haisset der planet auch **Mars**;
7 deromb;
8 wan er recht … wonder den siben planeten so sprechend die maist[er], das das haus sin stat;
9 und krieg;
10 mischen[?] sin.
11 Wan mit Mars in der Sonnen … gaut;
12 es maget …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

[1] …people … the most evil[?];

[2] … to a likeness … more of the most unfortunate;

[3] … [concerning] the god of strife;

[4] and when the wicked … fight, then they must [invoke] **Mars** … and warred upon him;

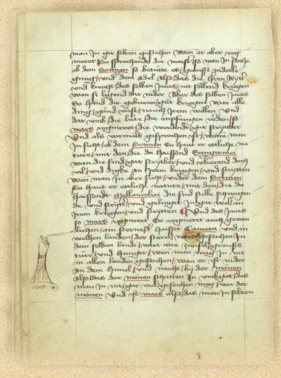
[5] offerings;

[6] … ¶ …when they wished to fight, and as the masters said, so the planet too is named **Mars**;

[7] therefore — for among the seven planets the masters say that his house is [strife] and war.

[8] For when Mars goes with the Sun … it may …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 33v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Mars (continued): the planet's nature, his "children," and his visibility

1 …man in der selben [stellung?] … wan er aber recht[-läufig?];
2 so sprauchend die maist[er]:
3 so man in [s]ehe ob den Sonnen, so betüte es gelück und ale gemüt;
4 und brougt das selben jaurs … mit stellend kriegen … Aber des selben jaurs es [hindert?] die … mit kriegen,
5 wan alle ding sind nauch jren willen.
6 Und darumb die lüte, die empfangen Mars, die werdende fri, striller[?];
7 und als vormals gesprochen ist:
8 wan man in [s]igt ob dem Sonnen, so haut er etliche natur mit den, die da haissend **Sangwinei**,
9 wan die sind [s]ere [kühn], und schwand doch vil, und [s]nelle an jren kriegen und streiten.
10 Wan man in aber [s]igt under dem Sonnen, so haut er etliche natur mit den, die da haissendt **Mellancolici**,
11 die sind stille, … und gelimpft, in jrem [streben?] und striten.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

12 ¶ Und des jaurs [planet] Mars vermaeret[?] … er wirt gesehen am sternen, [in seinen] Huiser;

13 und in woelhen landen … gesehen in dem selben lande … wan man maget in in allen landen gesehen,

14 wan er ist endos[?] an dem himel, und nauhe by der mönen … das man in … gesehen maget vor der mönen;

15 und ist Mars;

16 alps das man in [s]elten …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …[when one sees] him in the same [position] … but when he is [direct], the masters say:

2 if one sees him **above the Sun**, it means good fortune and good cheer,

3 and brings that year … with open wars … But that same year it [hinders] … with wars,

4 for all things go according to their will.

5 And therefore the people conceived under Mars become free [and warlike];

6 and, as said before, when one sees him **above the Sun**,

7 he shares somewhat the nature of those called **Sanguine** — for they are very [bold],

8 yet swift and quick in their wars and strife.

9 But when one sees him **below the Sun**, he shares somewhat the nature of those called **Melancholic** — they are quiet … and modest in their striving and strife.

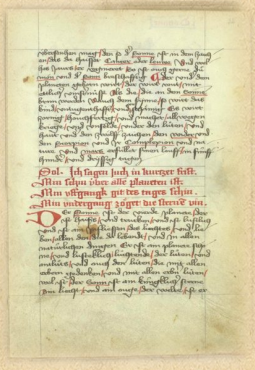
10 ¶ And in the year [of] Mars … he is seen among the stars, in his houses;

11 and in which lands … visible in that same land … for one may see him in all lands,

12 for he is conspicuous in the sky and near the Moon … such that one may see him before the Moon;

13 and it is Mars, [so] that one seldom …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 34r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

(end of Mars); then the Sun begins (verse)

1 …[ge]sehen maget;

2 den [s]o der Sonne ist in dem haus das da haisset **Cancer** oder **Lewen**;

3 und wond das jaurs er vermaeret[?] … ¶ Es ist der den planeten geboren wirt, der wirt von [s]mitaclich[?] complexion.

4 Als die, die an dem Sonne brom[?] werden nauch dem himel, so wirt das kind contugenthafft und schön.

5 Es wirt … hauchhafftig[?] und mager;

6 als vor an kriegs und ongelücke wonder den lüten;

7 und haut den zwölff zaichen den [Wider = Aries] und den **Scorpion**, und jr Complexion und mature;

8 und **Mars** erfüllet sinen lauff in fünff hundert und drissig tagen.

9 ¶ [red] **Sol.** ¶ [Vers:] Ich sagen üch in kurzer frist:

10 Min schin über alle planeten ist.

11 Min uffgang git des tages schin.

12 Min undergang zöget die sterne[n] vin.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…may be seen;
then when the Sun is in the house called **Cancer** or **Leo**;
and when, in that year, he [signifies]… ¶ Whoever is born under this planet becomes of a [moderate?] complexion.
Like those conceived under the Sun, according to heaven, the child becomes virtuous and handsome.
It becomes … proud[?] and lean;
as before, [inclined] to war and misfortune among people;
and [Mars] holds among the twelve signs the **Ram (Aries)** and the **Scorpion (Scorpio)**,
and their complexion and nature;
and **Mars** completes his course in five hundred and thirty days.
¶ **Sol (the Sun).** ¶ [The planet speaks:] "I tell you in a short while:
My shine is above all the planets.
My rising gives the daylight.
My setting brings forth the stars."

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 34v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the Sun (figure: a crowned/radiant figure); the "children of the Sun"

[D] Der Sonne ist der vierde planet;
der ist haisse und trucken;
und ist luchtig;
und ist am herausschiessen des tages;
… den, die er liebende;
und in allen natürlichen dingen.
Er ist am planet schönes;
und liebsälig;
hübsch;
und der lüten und antlüts;
und ouch den lüten, die mit allen eheren gedanken … ist der Sonne am küniglich gestirne … ¶ [er hat] gar schöne und wol-geschaffen, mit grossen ougen, und mit aim grossen bart, und mit langen haut;
und machet den menschen mauch der pelassen[?] jm gelichnen;
und machet in mauch an [s]achen wise;

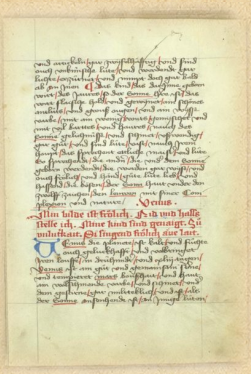
This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

14 und das man jm sehr lieb haut;
15 und machet in sehr … und listig in allen dingen.
16 ¶ Und mauch den planeten sind, [s]o natürer wie die **Sangwinei**,
17 wan die selben lüte sind gar bezognen in allen kunsten;
18 und sind aber [zu] gotlichen dingen.

TRANSLATION

1 The Sun is the fourth planet;
2 he is hot and dry, and luminous;
3 and is the bursting-forth of the day;
4 … to those he loves;
5 and in all natural things.
6 He is a planet of beauty, lovely, handsome, of [fair] people and faces;
7 and also of people who think with all honour … the Sun is a royal star … ¶ [Those born under it are] very beautiful and well-formed, with large eyes, a great beard, and long hair;
8 [the Sun] makes a person resemble [the noble];
9 and makes him wise in affairs;
10 and much-beloved;
11 and makes him very … and clever in all things.
12 ¶ And those under this planet are of the nature of the **Sanguine**,
13 for those same people are well accomplished in all the arts, and are inclined to godly things.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 35r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

(end of the Sun's "children"); then Venus begins (verse + prose)

1 …und artlich[?] und zauhselhafftig[?];

2 und sind ouch vortrinftische lüte;

3 … und nimmt doch gar bald ab.

4 ¶ Das kind, das jme geboren wirt des jaures [s]o der Sonne [regiert], das wirt flaisige, hold;

5 und gewirmet am schönes anlüts, und grouss ougen, und am waisse varbe mit am waeng rauts gemischet,

6 und mit vil bartes und haut, nauch der Sonne gelichnisse;

7 … und sind lüte fast nauch jren haupt, das si pflegent etliche maist[er]schafft … die [s]o dem Sonne geboren werdendt, die werden gar wisse, und ouch frölich, und hand gute lüte lieb, und [meiden] die bösen.

8 Der Sonn[e] haut under den zwölff zaichen den **Lewen** mit siner Complexion und nature.

9 ¶ [red] **Venus.** ¶ [Vers:] Min bilde ist frölich.

10 Lieb und hails stelle ich.

11 Mine kind sind genaigt

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

zü unlutkait.

Si singend frölich, sue lait. ¶ [V] Venus die planete ist kalt und füchte;

und gelück-hafft;

und vol-bringet iren louff in drühundert und ahzig tagen.

¶ Venus ist am gut und gemain [planet];

… und temperieret Mars[' Hitze];

und haut am wol-schmackende[n] rauche;

und gemäss;

… und ist [s]alde[?] der Sonne anstehende;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…and artful and capable;
and are also excellent people;
… but it soon declines.
¶ The child born in the year when the Sun [rules] becomes diligent and gracious;
and gets a handsome face, large eyes, a fair complexion mixed with a little red, and much beard and hair,
after the likeness of the Sun;
… and they are people firm in their purpose, who practise some mastery … those born under the Sun become very wise, and also cheerful, and love good people, and [shun] the wicked.
The Sun holds among the twelve signs the **Lion (Leo)**, with its complexion and nature.
¶ **Venus.** ¶ [The planet speaks:] "My image is merry.
Love and well-being I bestow.
My children are inclined to unchastity.
They sing merrily — to their sorrow." ¶ Venus the planet is cold and moist, and fortunate,
and completes her course in three hundred and eighty days.
¶ Venus is a good and common[?] planet;
… and tempers Mars's [heat];
and has a sweet scent;
and is moderate;
… and stands near the Sun;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 35v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Venus (figure: a crowned woman holding a mirror and flowers, above her houses Taurus and Libra); the "children of Venus"

1 Und sind jre kind gesälbe[?] lüte;
2 und unbürusge[?];
3 und die minnent die [s]chöne;
4 by frowen;
5 … und auch gemüsse[?];
6 von woelche trincken.
7 Wan Venus regnieret, so ist [es] gut minne;
8 … laussen;
9 und an dingstan[?].
10 Wan Venus vor dem Sonne gaut, so haisset si **Lucifer**;
11 und Venus machet den menschen … ¶ … [s]o si [dem Sonne] lurfet, … so haisset si **Vesper**;
12 und Venus machet den menschen amer schönen und mit raust-schwarz[?] ougen.
13 Als der Sonne an schinende ist, und machet den menschen mit der sele waiss-gewissende[?];

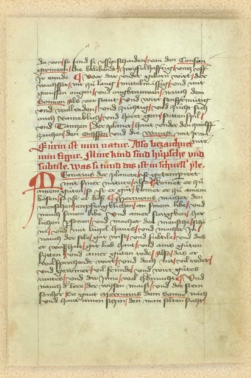
This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

14 und ouch mauch zwischen dingen [r]ein;
15 und sind die, die da haissendt **Colerici**[?];
16 die hand hymesse[?] die zwaifaltig sin;
17 und beliebendt doch mit [r]echt yren zwaifel von dem armde[?] …

TRANSLATION

1 And her children are graceful people;
2 … and they love beauty, [are fond] of women;
3 … and also merriment and drinking.
4 When Venus rules, it is good for love;
5 … bloodletting;
6 and for [betrothal?].
7 When Venus goes **before the Sun**, she is called **Lucifer** [the morning star];
8 and Venus makes a person … ¶ … when she **follows the Sun**, she is called **Vesper** [the evening star];
9 and Venus makes a person beautiful, with dark[?] eyes.
10 As the Sun is shining, she makes the person bright of soul;
11 … and clear[?] in matters;
12 and these are those called **Choleric**[?];
13 who have [natures] that are twofold, and yet rightly remain in their doubt … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 36r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

(end of Venus's "children"); then Mercury begins (verse + prose)

1 …da von sind si offt-schaden;
2 von der confusion[?] gewinent.
3 Ie blibent si zwaifelhafftig untz uff jr ende.
4 ¶ Wan der Sonne geboren wirt, so der woet gar lang,
mittelmässig, und mit grossen ougen und ougbrauwen,
5 nauch dem Sonne;
6 als vor staut;
7 und wirt … wol-reden und güttig;
8 und püget sich ouch [r]aine-bluts[?];
9 und hört gern[e] saitenspil und tanzen.
10 Der planet haut under den zwölff zaichen den **Ochssen** und
die **Wauge** mit siner Complexion.
11 ¶ [red] [Mercurius].
12 ¶ [Vers:] [Subtil/Wandelbar?] ist min natur.
13 Als bezaichnet min figur.
14 Mine kind sind hüpsche und subtile.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

Was si tünd, das ist in schnell[e]r yle. *[*The opening word is a genuine two-way uncertainty.

The prose immediately following — "Mercurius … ist temperiert … kompt er zü amen güten, so ist er güt;

kompt er zü amen bösen, so ist er böse" (Mercury takes on whatever he is joined to) — describes Mercury's defining *changeability*, which mildly favours *Wandelbar* ("changeable is my nature") over *Subtil* (which would also pre-empt "subtile" in line 3);

left flagged pending collation.] ¶ [M] Mercurius der planete ist temperiert mit siner mature;

als:

kompt er zü amen güten, so ist er güt;

kompt er zü amen bösen, so ist er böse.

¶ Mercurius machet den menschen sanfft … an sinem libe;

… und machet den menschen gros[s]-mässig und mit kugel-haut;

und machet jhn … gar wisse und subtile;

und … ame güten siten und amer güten rede, das er wol-spraugende wirt;

und gewirmet vil fründ … Und nauch der lere der wisen maist[er] und der sternsehe[r]:

es haut **Mercurius** dem Sonne nauch, und haut amen schin, den man selten sieht.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…therefore they often come to harm;
out of confusion they [gain it].
They remain doubtful to their very end.
¶ One born under the Sun becomes very tall, of middling build, with large eyes and brows, after the Sun,
as said before;
and becomes well-spoken and kindly;
keeps himself [pure of blood?];
and gladly hears music and dancing.
This planet [Venus] holds among the twelve signs the **Bull (Taurus)** and the **Scales (Libra)**,
with its complexion.
¶ **[Mercury].** ¶ [The planet speaks:] "[Subtle/changeable] is my nature, as my figure shows.
My children are handsome and subtle.
Whatever they do is done in swift haste." ¶ Mercury the planet is temperate/adaptable by its nature:
thus if it joins a good [planet] it is good;
if it joins a bad one it is bad.
¶ Mercury makes a person gentle in body … and of middling size with a round head;
and makes him very wise and subtle;
… of good manners and good speech, so that he becomes eloquent;
and gains many friends … And according to the teaching of the wise masters and the astronomers,
Mercury follows the Sun, and has a gleam one seldom sees.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 36v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Mercury (figure: a seated figure with caduceus (intertwined snakes) and a purse, above his houses Virgo and Gemini); the "children of Mercury"

[1] [red] **Mercurius.** Dar omb er dem Sonne[n] als mauch[?] ist.

[2] ¶ Die und den planeten **Mercurio** geboren woerden, die gewirmend:

[3] grouss ougen[?];

[4] und woedend wol-spraichet;

[5] … und liegt by den lüten;

[6] und blaugen der varbe;

[7] und … schin;

[8] und sind [s]tille und subtile;

[9] und woet vil an sin[nen] … ¶ und hand ouch mit bouszhait[?] jn man [s]elber.

[10] **Mercurius** erfüllet sinen louff in drühundert und […] tagen;

[11] … ¶ Und die **Mellancolici**, die sind gar geschlacht und ame güten nautes[?];

[12] und gewirmen man [s]elber … redende;

[13] und ouch alle ding[e] gemainlichen … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 **Mercury.** Therefore he is so [close] to the Sun.

2 ¶ Those born under the planet **Mercury** gain large eyes[?];

3 and become well-spoken;

4 … and dwell among people;

5 and are of a pale/bluish complexion;

6 and … gleam;

7 and are quiet and subtle;

8 and become much given to thought … ¶ and also have some malice[?] within themselves.

9 **Mercury** completes his course in three hundred and […] days.

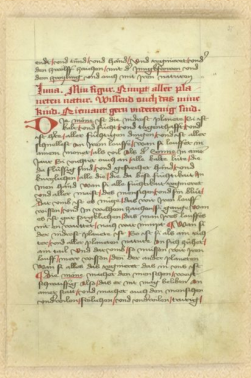
10 ¶ And the **Melancholic** [children of Mercury] are well-natured and of a good [disposition];

11 and gain [...] of themselves;

12 … fluent of speech;

13 and [do] all things in general [...].

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 37r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

(end of Mercury); then the Moon begins (verse + prose)

…ende;
und kind;
und hand … und [haut under] den zwölff zaichen die **Jungfrowen** und den **Zwilling**;
und ouch mit jrer nature.
¶ [red] **Luna.** ¶ [Vers:] Min figur zaigt aller planeten natur.
Wissend ouch das mine kind
ze [laeunant?] gern undertenig sind. ¶ [D] Die möne ist die [s]idost planeta;
si ist kalt und füecht und tugenthafft;
… und ist aller [s]chnellest an jren louffe, wan si louffet in amem monet als vil als der Sonne in amem jaur;
si zougret ouch an alle kalte lüte, die da flüssig sind …;
und kurtzlichen alle die, die da böse füecht[blut?] in man hand;
wan si alle füecht[e] vermeret, und aller maist des menschen und sin[es] blüt.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

13 Dar omb ist es müge, das wir jran louff wissen, und in woelhen zaichen si gienge.

14 ¶ Wan si der [s]idost planete ist, so ist si als am … und [zieht] aller planeten mature an sich;

15 ain tail;

16 und dar omb so müssen wir jran louff mer wissen den[n] der ander planeten … ¶ [D] Die möne machet den menschen waich [und] …, als das er mit may belieben an amer statt;

17 und machet auch den menschen … woelen frölichen, und woelen traurig.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …end;

2 and children;

3 and have …;

4 and [holds among] the twelve signs the **Virgin (Virgo)** and the **Twins (Gemini)**, and also their nature.

5 ¶ **Luna (the Moon).** ¶ [The planet speaks:] "My figure shows the nature of all the planets.

6 Know also that my children are gladly obedient." ¶ The Moon is the [last/seventh] planet;

7 she is cold and moist and virtuous;

8 … and is the swiftest of all in her course, for she runs in one month as much as the Sun in a year;

9 she inclines toward all cold, moist (phlegmatic) people …;

10 and, in short, all who have bad moisture in them, for she increases all moisture — most of all in humans and their blood.

11 Therefore it is needful that we know her course, and in which sign she goes.

12 ¶ Since she is the last planet, she is like a [vessel], and draws to herself a part of all the planets' nature;

13 and therefore we must know her course more than the other planets' … ¶ The Moon makes a person soft and [fickle], so that he can scarcely stay in one place;

14 and makes a person sometimes cheerful and sometimes sad.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 37v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the Moon (figure: a seated woman with a crescent and a torch on a wheeled chariot, above her house Cancer); the "children of the Moon"

1 [red] **Luna.** …und doch das mer[?]-tail also bald;
2 und machet den menschen zorn[?] … und machet sin gar fuege mate[?];
3 und [es] hassend[?] die selben mönschen **flegmatici**;
4 und … gut[e] träge;
5 und das mön … haut alle zit ongelücke[?] … das am grösser ist den[n] das ander.
6 Und erfüllet jre louff alle monet … ¶ …und erfüllet jre louff alle monet;
7 und erlinget[?] … und … lautmer[?] si haut von dem Sonnen;
8 und maeret sich;
9 und … das [Licht?] von dem Sonnen, als hie [ge]zaiget staut.
10 ¶ Und die kind, die si machet, die [s]ind klain[?];
11 … gewonlichen …;
12 und haut gar vil gemainsam mit dem mönschen;
13 und omb die mässe;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

14 … von dem Sonnen;
15 und wirt die mön vermaeret, so ist … ¶

TRANSLATION

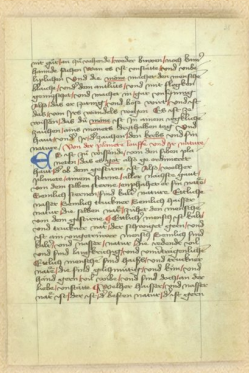
1 **Luna (the Moon).** …and [governs] the [tide?] so swiftly;
2 and makes a person [prone to anger];
3 … and makes him quite pliable/changeable;
4 and those same people are **phlegmatic**;
5 … and rather sluggish;
6 and the Moon … always has misfortune[?] …, the one greater than the other.
7 And she completes her course every month … ¶ …and completes her course every month;
8 and gains [her light] … she has from the Sun;
9 and increases;
10 and … [her light] from the Sun, as is shown here.
11 ¶ And the children she makes are small[?];
12 … usually …;
13 and they have very much in common with [changeable] people;
14 and about the measure …;
15 from the Sun;
16 and when the Moon is waxing, then it is … ¶ > End of the planets (f.
17 29r–37v). The seven-planet treatise is now transcribed page by page:
18 the Ptolemaic intro with the **planetary hours**, then Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, the Sun, Venus,
19 Mercury and the Moon — each with its first-person verse,
20 its painted god-figure over the zodiac "houses" it rules,
21 the planet's nature/complexion and its effect on the "children" born under it.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

EDITORIAL NOTE

End of the planets (f. 29r–37v). The seven-planet treatise is now transcribed page by page: the Ptolemaic intro with the **planetary hours**, then **Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, the Sun, Venus, Mercury and the Moon** — each with its first-person verse, its painted god-figure over the zodiac "houses" it rules, the planet's nature/complexion and its effect on the "children" born under it.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 38r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

(end of the Moon); then "On the planets' course and their nature"

…mag kam hande[?] sachen, wan es ist [un]constante und unbeliplichen;

und die möne machet den menschen blunde[?] am antlüts, und mit … gemisget;

und machet in gar consturnig[?], als das er gut-mütig und [dann] böse wirt;

und ist das von jrer wandelbar[en] wausen[?].

Es ist ze wissen, das dü möne ist in amen yeglichen zaichen jedes monets [bei zweieinhalb?] tag[en];

und haut jr zwölff zaichen, als der **Krebs**, und sin mature.

¶ **Von der planeten louffe und jr nature.** ¶ [E] Es ist ze wissende von den siben planeten und jr mature,

das es haut also ze ordmieren:

… ob dem gestirne ist;

als woelher planeta amen sterne[n] aller naigste gaut, von dem selben sterne[n] empfahet er sin mature:

semlich sind kalt[er] nature, etliche naser, semlich truckner,

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

12 … haisser … ¶ …die selben [Eigenschaften] brüset[?] den menschen von dem gestirne:

13 etliche mensch ist kalt[er] und truckner mat[ur], der schwarzer, und ist am consturmer mensch;

14 semlich sind kalt und nasser mature;

15 … hot lüte sind haisser und truckner mat[ur], die sind … und … vil rauhe;

16 und sind … der liebe, und [con]state.

17 ¶ Welher haisser und nasser mat[ur] ist, der ist ze besten nature, und ist [s]chön …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …[the Moon's children] hardly persist in things, for she is inconstant and unsettled;

2 and the Moon makes a person fair of face, mixed with [other tints];

3 and makes him quite fickle, so that he becomes good-natured and [then] bad;

4 and that comes from her changeable nature.

5 Be it known that the Moon stands in each sign about [two and a half] days each month;

6 and has her twelve signs, as the **Crab (Cancer)**, and its nature.

7 ¶ **On the planets' course and their nature.** ¶ Be it known, concerning the seven planets and their nature,

8 that it is ordered thus:

9 … whatever is above the firmament — whichever planet passes nearest a star,

10 from that same star it receives its nature:

11 some are of cold nature, some moist, some dry, … some hot … ¶ …these same [qualities] shape the person from the firmament:

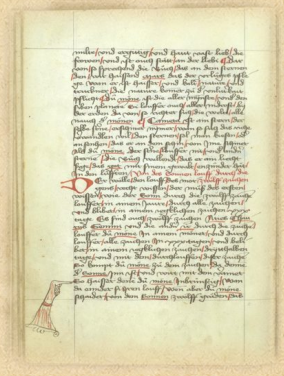
12 one person is of cold and dry nature — the black [bile] — and is a [melancholic] person;

13 some are of cold and moist nature …;

14 hot people are of hot and dry nature, these are … and very rough, and are [given] to love, and constant.

15 ¶ Whoever is of hot and moist nature is of the best nature, and is beautiful …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 38v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

complexions (concl.); then "On the Sun's course through the twelve signs" (with a marginal pointing-hand)

1 …milte und gütig;
2 und haut vast lieb die frowen;
3 und ist auch zütsam[?] der liebe.
4 ¶ Dar zü sprechend die wisen, das [von] dem sternen den [man] kalt[?] haissend **Mars** …;
5 wan er ist haisser und kalter mature und truckner.
6 … ¶ Dü möne ist die aller [m]inste … so den siben planeta;
7 … bis der erden, da von si [s]ie liegt …;
8 woelhe alle nauch der mönen [richten].
9 ¶ [E] Es ist am stern, der selbe … immer;
10 … wil den sternen [beobachten], sol man kiesen [und] an sehen, an den zaichen … von jme immer;
11 als dü möne der [s]chnellster ist …;
12 als er am liecht haut … in den lüfften.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

13 ¶ **Von der Sonnen lauff durch die [zwölff zaichen].** ¶ [D] Der wile [es?] der louff der zwölff zaichen gar [recht] wissen [will], der müß des ersten wissen wie der Sonn[e] durch die zwölff zaichen lauffet in amem jaure durch alle zaichen;

14 und blibet in amem yeglichen zaichen **xxx tage**.

15 Es sind ouch zwölff zaichen.

16 ¶ [I] Item [s]chau:

17 als der Sonn[e] und die ander[en planeten], [s]o durch die zaichen lauffet dü möne in amem monet;

18 und durch-lauffet alle zaichen in **xxviij tagen**;

19 und blibet in amem yeglichen zaichen **zwei und ainhalben tag**;

20 … In der [zit] so kompt dü möne zü dem zaichen, da [auch] der Sonne jm ist, und wirt mit dem [zusammen];

21 so haisset denne dü möne unbrinsich[?];

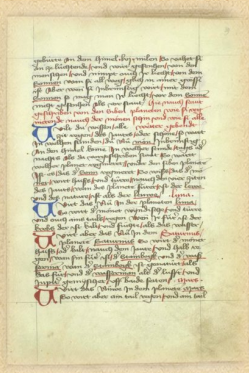
22 … wan aber dü möne [geht] von dem Sonnen **zwölff graden**, so ist … [die Mondsichel wieder sichtbar].

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…mild and kindly;
and loves women dearly;
and is also inclined to love.
¶ Moreover the wise say that of the star they call **Mars** …;
for he is of hot and cold and dry nature.
… ¶ The Moon is the smallest of the seven planets …, [nearest] to the earth, by which she lies lowest;
… all [reckon] by the Moon.
¶ There is a star [whose nature is] ever …;
[whoever would observe] the star should choose and look at which sign it is in …;
as the Moon is the swiftest …;
as she has a light … in the airs.
¶ **On the Sun's course through the twelve signs.** ¶ Whoever would rightly know the course of the twelve signs must first know how the Sun runs through the twelve signs in one year, through all the signs, and stays in each sign **thirty days**.
There are also twelve signs.
¶ Item, observe:
as the Sun and the other planets [move], so the Moon runs through the signs in one month,
running through all the signs in **28 days**, and staying in each sign **two and a half days**;
… When the Moon comes to the sign where the Sun also is, and joins with it, then the Moon is called "dark" [new];
… but when the Moon is **twelve degrees** from the Sun, then [the crescent is again visible].

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 39r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the new moon; weather prognostication by the planet/sign of the lunation

…gebürte an dem himel, by;

so woelhet si an ze liechtende, und woet gesehen von den menschen;

und nimmt auch jr liecht von den Sonnen, wan si … gelich in amer grösse ist.

Aber wan si unbrinsig woet, so [wird] man si [kaum] vor den Sonne[n] gesehen;

als … geschriben von den siben planeten, wie si vermerend mauch der mönen sin schin … alle wile … alle woeter geben.

¶ [Es betrifft] die rede des jaures:

in woelhen sterne[n] dü mön unbrinsig an den himel kome, in woelher stunde, als da vorgeschriben staut;

so [regiert] woelher planet vermeret [ist].

¶ Wonder den siben planeten:

ist das der Sonn[e] vermeret, so woisse, das der möne mit [s]chinet, das si wirt haisse und trucken,

mauch den vier ziten des jaures;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

12 wan der planete fürer ist der **Lewe**, und der nature ist als der Lewe.

13 ¶ [red] **Luna.** Wirt das dü mön [steht] an der planeten **Luna**, so wirt der monet windig und trübe,

14 und ouch aim tail regen, wan jr für ist [der] kalt und füchte, als das wasser.

15 ¶ Wirt aber das [die] Mun in dem [planeten] **Saturnus**, so wirt der monet gar kalt, nauch dem jaure,

16 und halb ze [s]nyen;

17 wan sin für ist der **Stainbock** und der **Wasserman** … das ist bade siten.

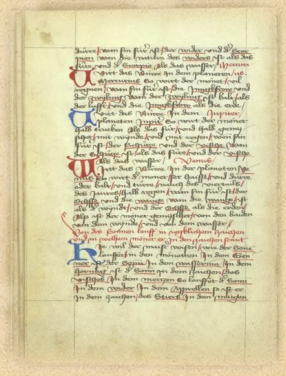
18 ¶ Wirt das [die] Mün in dem planeten **Mars**, so wirt aber am tail regen, und am tail …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…[the Moon is] born [anew] in the sky, near [the Sun];
then she wishes to begin to shine and is seen by people;
and takes her light from the Sun, for she is [always] equal in size.
But when she becomes "dark" [new], one scarcely sees her near the Sun;
as is written above of the seven planets — how they increase the Moon's shine, and ever give [signs of] all weather.
¶ [It concerns] the reckoning of the year:
in which star [sign] the Moon comes "dark" [conjunct] into the sky, in which hour, as written above;
then whichever planet is strengthened [governs].
¶ Among the seven planets:
if the **Sun** is strengthened, know that the Moon shines with it,
so that she becomes hot and dry — in each of the four seasons — for that planet's leader is **Leo**,
and its nature is like the Lion.
¶ **Luna.** If the Moon falls under the planet **Luna**, the month becomes windy and turbid,
and also partly rainy, for her nature is cold and moist, like water.
¶ If the Moon falls in **Saturn**, the month becomes very cold, depending on the season, and half-snowing,
for his nature is **Capricorn** and **Aquarius** … that is both sides.
¶ If the Moon falls in **Mars**, then it becomes partly rain, and partly …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 39v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

lunation weather-table (concl.); then "On the Sun's course in each sign"

…trübe, wan sin für ist der **Wider** und der **Scorpion**;

wan die nature des Widers ist als das für, und der Scorpie als das wasser.

¶ [M] Wirt das [die] Mune an dem planeten **Mercurius**, so wirt der monet aim tail regnen,

wan sin für ist die **Junckfrow** und der **Zwifling**;

wan der Zwifling ist halb als der luft, und die Junckfrow als die erde.

¶ [J] Wirt das [die] Mune in dem [planeten] **Jupiter**, so wirt der monet halb trucken, als das für,

und halb [feucht], mit winde und mit regen;

wan sin für ist der **Schütze** und der **Vische**;

wan der Schütze ist als das für, und der Vische als das wasser.

¶ [V] Wirt das [die] Mune in der planeten **Venus**, so wirt der monet haisse und trübe,

der halb … mit des viertails halb regen;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

12 wan sin für [selber] der **Ochse** und die **Wauge** … ¶ Als ist der monet gemischet von den baiden:

13 von dem winde und von dem wasser.

14 ¶ **Von des Sonnen lauff in yeglichem zaichen, und in woelhem monet er in dem zaichen staut.** ¶ [W] [W]e[r] wil der mässe wissen, wie der Sonne lauffet in den mönotten:

15 [im Genner / Januar] gaut Sonn[e] in dem **Wasserman**;

16 in dem Hornung ist der Sonn[e] in dem zaichen des **Vissches**;

17 in dem Mertzen es lauffet der Sonn[e] in den **Wider**;

18 so [im April] er in den zaichen des **Stiers**;

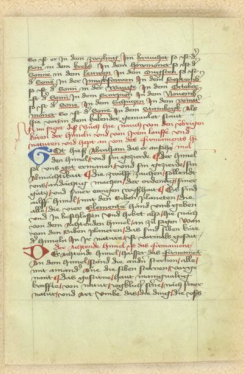
19 in den Mayen …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…turbid, for his [Mars's] nature is the **Ram (Aries)** and the **Scorpion (Scorpio)**;
for the Ram's nature is like fire, and the Scorpion like water.
¶ **Mercury:** if the Moon falls under Mercury, the month becomes partly rainy,
for his nature is the **Virgin (Virgo)** and the **Twins (Gemini)**;
for the Twins are half like air, and the Virgin like earth.
¶ **Jupiter:** if the Moon falls in Jupiter, the month becomes half dry, like fire, and half [moist],
with wind and rain;
for his nature is the **Archer (Sagittarius)** and the **Fishes (Pisces)**;
for the Archer is like fire, the Fishes like water.
¶ **Venus:** if the Moon falls in Venus, the month becomes hot and turbid — half … with half rain in a quarter [of the year] — for her nature is the **Bull (Taurus)** and the **Scales (Libra)** … ¶ Thus the month is mixed of the two:
of wind and of water.
¶ **On the Sun's course in each sign, and in which month it stands in the sign.** ¶ Whoever would know how the Sun runs through the months:
in [January] the Sun goes in **Aquarius**;
in February the Sun is in the sign of the **Fishes (Pisces)**;
in March the Sun runs into the **Ram (Aries)**;
then [in April] in the sign of the **Bull (Taurus)**;
in May …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 40r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Sun's monthly signs (concl.); then "On the eleven heavens" (the cosmology; Von den 11 Himmelssphären)

1 …[s]o ist er in dem Brachet, so ist [die] Sonn[e] in dem **Krebs**;
2 in dem Höwmonat so ist [die] Sonne in dem **Lewen**;
3 in dem Ougsten ist der Sonne in der **Jungfrowen**;
4 in dem September ist der Sonn[e] in der **Wauge**;
5 in dem October ist [die] Sonne in dem **Scorpion**;
6 in dem November ist der Sonne in dem **Schützen**;
7 in dem Wintermonet ist [die] Sonne in dem **Stainbock**.
8 ¶ Als vorstaut in dem kalender genauer.
9 ¶ [Es] saget diß büch hie mauch von den röbigen kröben[?] der himeln, und von jren louffe und naturen;
10 und hept an von des firmaments … ¶ [G] Got hiess **Abraham**, das er anschowi den himel und sin gezierde.
11 ¶ Der himel sal uns got erkennen [lassen], und sin gezierde, sin almächtikait;
12 die zwölff zaichen söllend uns [s]andächtig machen [vor] der ordnung … und siner waisen woissheit.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

13 ¶ Die sind ailff himel mit den erden, den planeten, die alle die vier elementen hand umb-geben … ¶ …und [um] von den röbigen himel an zü zaigen:

14 wan von den siben planeten [sind] himel siben;

15 in jrer nature ist [s]emlich gespan[?];

16 der himeln sin siben.

17 ¶ [D] Der zehende himel ist das **firmament**.

18 An dem himel sind die andern sternen alle mit ainander, ane die siben sternen vorgenant;

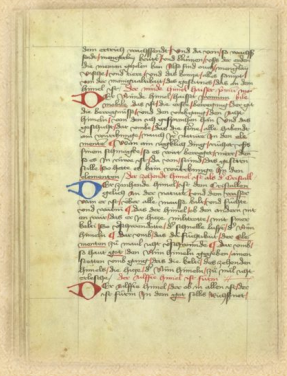
19 das gestirne haut manigvaltig kraft von nature, ye bliebt siner mature und art, umbe die ding, die …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …so [in June] the Sun is in the **Crab (Cancer)**;
2 in July in the **Lion (Leo)**;
3 in August in the **Virgin (Virgo)**;
4 in September in the **Scales (Libra)**;
5 in October in the **Scorpion (Scorpio)**;
6 in November in the **Archer (Sagittarius)**;
7 in December in the **Ibex (Capricorn)**.
8 ¶ As stands exactly in the calendar.
9 ¶ This book here tells much of the remaining [spheres] of the heavens, and of their course and natures,
10 and begins with the firmament … ¶ God bade **Abraham** behold the heaven and its adornment.
11 ¶ The heaven should make us know God, and his adornment, his almightiness;
12 the twelve signs should make us devout before the [cosmic] order … and his wise wisdom.
13 ¶ There are **eleven heavens**, with the earth [and] the planets,
14 which all surround the four elements … ¶ …and, to point out the remaining heavens:
15 of the seven planets there are seven heavens, each of its own nature;
16 the [planetary] heavens are seven.
17 ¶ The **tenth heaven is the firmament**.
18 In this heaven are all the other stars together, besides the seven aforesaid planets;
19 the [fixed] stars have manifold power by nature, each keeping its own nature and kind, regarding the things which …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 40v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the eleven heavens (cont.): the firmament's stars, the primum mobile, the crystalline heaven, and the fiery Empyrean

1 …dem ertrich woachssende;
2 und da von [s]o woachssende mancherlay kruet und blümen off der erden, die menni zailen kan;
3 also sind ouch mancherlay vische und tiere;
4 das kompt alles von der **mineralibus**, das ist [s]ternes, das an dem himel ist.
5 ¶ **Der ainlff himel haisset primum mobile.** ¶ [D] Der ainlff himel haisset **primum mobile**,
6 das ist die [erst]e bewegung;
7 der … die bewegt, müess sin … den nach[gelegenen] himeln von den nest-gelegenen himeln;
8 und [s]o gesprochen, der [umfaßt] die [s]ene alle habende;
9 an woelchms sich mauch die nature an den elementen.
10 ¶ Wan ain yeglich ding frühger [bewegt] ist, so man [s]chmackt es,
11 es wirt bewöset mer den[n] es in sinem selber ist … in den elementen.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

12 ¶ **Der zehende himel ist als der cristall.** ¶ [D] Der zehende himel ist dem cristallen gelich an der nature,

13 und dem wasser, wan er ist über alle mässe kalt und füchte … ¶ [Darum ist] der himel ob den andern …,

14 das er so [die] hize milturte mit siner kelti;

15 so [hemmt er] jr [s]nelle louffe der [s]chimeln;

16 darumb das die [s]chnellet der elementen zü maul nit ge-wormde;

17 darumb so haut got den ainlff himeln geschaffen sinen [s]tatten, umb jenes:

18 das die kelti des zehenden himels die hize der ainlff himeln zü maul nit ge[wärme].

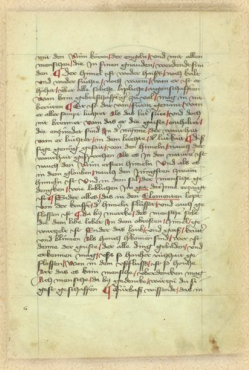
19 ¶ **Der ailffte himel, der ob in allen ist, der ist firin, in dem [s]ich got selber bezaichnet.** ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …growing on the earth;
2 and from [the stars] grow manifold herbs and flowers on the earth, more than one can count;
3 likewise manifold fish and beasts — it all comes from the "**minerals**," that is,
4 from the star that is in the heaven.
5 ¶ **The eleventh heaven is called primum mobile.** ¶ The eleventh heaven is called **primum mobile**,
6 that is the first movement;
7 which moves [the rest], and must [encompass] the heavens below it, from the nearest-lying heavens;
8 and it is said to hold them all;
9 whereby nature stirs in the elements.
10 ¶ For whatever thing is moved sooner, as one perceives, it is moved more than it is in itself … in the elements.
11 ¶ **The tenth heaven is like crystal.** ¶ The tenth heaven is like crystal in its nature, and like water,
12 for it is beyond measure cold and moist … ¶ [Therefore] this heaven [is set] above the others … so that it may temper the heat with its cold;
13 thus it checks the swift course of the heavens, so that the swiftness of the elements may not overheat;
14 therefore God set the eleventh heaven in its place, so that the cold of the tenth heaven may keep the heat of the [other] heavens from overheating.
15 ¶ **The eleventh heaven, which is above all, is fiery, in which God reveals himself.** ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 41r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the eleven heavens (cont.): the fiery Empyrean, the angels and the blessed; the heaven's life-giving influence

…mit den [niun?] kören der engeln, und mit allen menschen, die in siner gnauden woerdent sin.

¶ Der himel ist weder haisse noch kalt, und weder füchte noch warm, wan er ist über alle [s]chöpfe liplige sachen.

¶ Wan kain gebreste [ihn berührt];

… der himel, der [Empyreum?] genant;

wan er aller sampt liechtet, als das liecht für, und doch nit brennet;

wan das ist die haisse schädliche, die engindet sind … der menschen;

wan er liechtet … ¶ [D]iß hize ge[wir]met von dem himel mauch der [Sache], als an jr nature ist;

und [reicht zu] den ainen ersten himeln.

¶ Und als es in dem glauben [steht von] der jüngsten … in dem [s]alden menschen ze danken [s]e,

wie lieblich jhm got die [s]ele erzaigt ist.

¶ Der aller[erst?]:

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

12 das in den Elementen lept, von dem haisse[n] himeln [s]liesset, und ouch ge-flossen ist;

13 da by merke, das [des] menschen sele, die dem libe lebet, in dem obrosten himel [s]e wurzele ist;

14 und [s]er das loub und [s]raß, kraut und blümen, als hong, blomen sind.

15 … denne der haisse, der alle ding gebildet, und erkennen mag … wan in dem [s]o [s]liesset sich … das [s]o kain mensche ge-danken mag, nach menschen gedenken, woer zü du das [er]schaffen.

16 ¶ Auch das [ist] wissende, das in …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …with the [nine] choirs of angels, and with all people who will be in his grace.

2 ¶ The heaven is neither hot nor cold, neither moist nor warm, for it is above all corporeal things.

3 ¶ For no defect [touches] it;

4 … the heaven, called [the Empyrean];

5 for it shines wholly, like the light of fire, and yet does not burn — for that is the harmful heat that is kindled [below] in men;

6 for it shines [as light] … ¶ This heat warms, from the heaven, each thing according to its nature;

7 and reaches to the first heaven.

8 ¶ And as the faith holds concerning the Last [Day] … in the blessed it is [cause] to give thanks,

9 how lovingly God has shown them the soul.

10 ¶ First:

11 that which lives in the elements flows, and has flowed, from the fiery heaven;

12 whereby note that the human soul, which lives in the body, has its root in the highest heaven;

13 just as the leaf and grass, herb and flowers, like honey [and] blossoms are.

14 … than the heat, which has formed all things and can know them … for in it is enclosed [that] which no human can fathom, nor by human thought [grasp] to what end you created it.

15 ¶ Also be it known that in …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 41v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the firmament's twelve parts (roundel: two astronomers observing)

1 Den firmament[s] zwölff zaichen sind.

2 Das sind zwölff taile des selben himels, mit dem gestirne das in den selben himeln staut.

3 ¶ Das niemand die mässe alsbald war …, das der Sonne und die andern planeten in amen tail des himels [s]taut,

4 jne in dem andern;

5 und da von [s]o [ist] gebunden [s]i jedem[?];

6 am gelichnisse sams tieres, als hie vor staut.

7 ¶ Item der himel ist ainval an jm selber, und lauffet der Sonne in das gestirne;

8 und lauffet umb … kain gestirne … das ander lauffet;

9 so der Sonne lauffet … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 The firmament has twelve signs.

2 These are twelve parts of that same heaven, with the constellation that stands in that heaven.

3 ¶ [So] that no one can grasp the measure all at once …;

4 namely that the Sun and the other planets each stand in one part of the heaven, each in another;

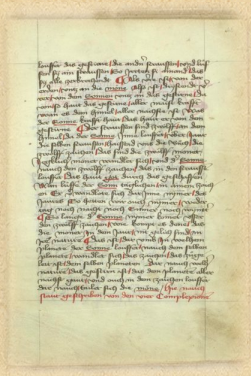
5 and thereby each is bound [to its place];

6 by the likeness of the beasts [the zodiac figures], as shown here before.

7 ¶ Item, the heaven is one revolution in itself, and the Sun runs into the constellation, and runs around …;

8 as the Sun runs … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 42r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

conclusion of the cosmology: the twelve signs as the twelve months; the Sun's constant yearly circle (→ "the four complexions")

1 …lauffet das gestirne;

2 die andern [sterne];

3 … es kettet si anand, das si alle [umlaufende].

4 ¶ Als ist die rede von der möne;

5 als ist es by der ander[en planeten];

6 und an die möne [nimmt sie] es von dem Sonnen, und [die Natur] an dem gestirne.

7 Da kompt es das gestirne aller maist [Kraft hat], wan es von dem himel aller naigste ist;

8 was [an] der Sonne kraffte ist, haut es von dem gestirne.

9 ¶ Der [stationen] sind zwölff an dem himel, da der Sonne jme [hindurch] lauffet;

10 … die selben [stationen] haissend uns die zwölff zaichen;

11 das sind die zwölff monot.

12 ¶ Ye-gelich monet woandler sich, und der Sonne [zieht] nauch den zwölff zaichen, das in den [stationen] lauffet;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

13 das haut gott geschaffen, wan lauffet der Sonne taglichen in amen kraiß an.

14 Er woandlote sich, das [nimmer] … das jaur[es] [bleibt gleich];

15 weder tag mauch noch maget, noch [die] Sonne nymer [anders] komet;

16 aber [s]o der Sonne in den zwölff zaichen [umher] kompt, [folgt] es,

17 das die monet in dem jaures mit-gelich sind in jrer nature.

18 ¶ Das ist das comb:

19 in woelhem planeta der Sonne lauffet, nauch dem selben woandler sich das zaichen … nauch woelt nature das gestirne ist.

20 ¶ Den der planeta aller naigst gaut, und ouch in den zaichen lauffet …;

21 die möne …;

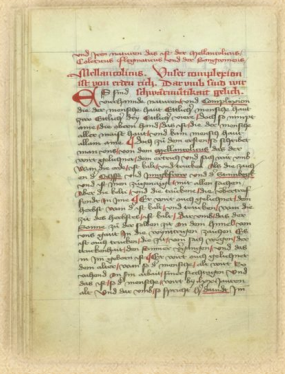
22 wie [hernach] staut geschriben von den **vier complexionen**.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …the constellation runs;
2 [and] the other [stars];
3 … it links them together, so that they all revolve.
4 ¶ Such is the account of the Moon;
5 and so it is with the other [planets];
6 and the Moon takes its [light] from the Sun, and its nature from the constellation.
7 Thence it comes that the constellation has the most [power], for it is nearest the heaven;
8 whatever powers the Sun has, it has from the constellation.
9 ¶ The [stations] are twelve in the heaven, through which the Sun runs;
10 … these same [stations] we call the twelve signs;
11 these are the twelve months.
12 ¶ Each month changes, and the Sun [passes] through the twelve signs that run in the [stations];
13 God created it so, for the Sun runs daily in a circle.
14 It changes, so that the year [stays constant]:
15 neither day more nor less, nor does the Sun ever come [otherwise];
16 but as the Sun comes round through the twelve signs, it follows that the months in the year are alike in their nature.
17 ¶ That is why:
18 in whichever sign the Sun runs, the [month] changes accordingly … according to whatever nature the constellation has.
19 ¶ The planet that goes nearest [the constellation], and also runs in the signs …;
20 the Moon …;
21 as is written hereafter of the **four complexions**.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 42v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the four complexions named; the Melancholic (earth / autumn / old age)

…und jren naturen:

das ist der **Mellancolicus**, **Colericus**, **Flegmaticus**, und der **Sangwineus**.

¶ [red] **Mellancolicus.** ¶ [Vers:] Unser complexion ist von erden rich.

Darumb sind wir [der] schwärmütikait gelich. ¶ [A] Nauch-komende naturen und Complexion die der mensche haut:

Etlich mensch haut gar Choleri[ca] …;

etlich [alle] viere;

doch [s]o nimmt aine die oberhand:

das ist die, der [die] mensche aller maist haut;

und kain mensche haut allain aine.

¶ Doch zü dem ersten schreibet man uns von dem **Mellancolicus**:

der woert gelich der erde;

und [s]ag woir omb:

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

13 wan die erde selbe kalt und trucken ist, als die zwo …;
14 und ist [s]chwer zü ze nagen[?] mit allen sachen;
15 aber die kalti und die trückene, die [s]obervast sind in jme.
16 ¶ Er woet auch gelich-mer dem **herbst**, wan der ist kalt und trucken, wan die zit des herbstes fast kalt [ist];
17 darumb, [s]o die zit des herbstes, [s]o die Sonne zü der selben zit an dem himel von uns [s]taut,
18 in die wintterschen zaichen.
19 Es ist ouch trucken, die zit [s]o von sich woisen der dunkenhait,
20 [wenn] den sommer [nicht mehr] [s]chinet … ¶ [Er ist] ouch gelichmer dem **alter**,
21 wan [s]o der mensche alt woet, [s]o rauhand an sin arbait sin[er] prestange;
22 und das ist, [s]o der mensche woet by jaur[en] alt.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…and their natures:
that is the **Melancholic**, the **Choleric**, the **Phlegmatic**, and the **Sanguine**.
¶ **Melancholic.** ¶ [Verse:] "Our complexion is of the earth;
therefore we are akin to melancholy." ¶ Concerning the natures and complexion that follow, which a person has:
some people have quite choleric […];
some [have all] four;
yet one takes the upper hand — the one a person has most of;
and no one has only a single one.
¶ But first one writes of the **Melancholic**:
he is like the earth;
and we say why — for the earth itself is cold and dry, like the two [qualities];
and is heavy/hard to deal with in all things;
and the cold and the dryness are very strong in him.
¶ He is also like **autumn**, for that is cold and dry, since the season of autumn is very cold;
for in autumn the Sun at that time stands far from us in the heaven, in the wintry signs.
It is also dry — the season when the darkness shows itself,
when the summer no longer shines … ¶ He is also like **old age**, for when a person grows old,
his ailments press hard upon his labour;
that is when a person grows old in years.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

The Four Temperaments

folio 43r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the Melancholic (genre-scene: an older woman and a youth at a laid table); character in points

1 [Un]selig ist der mensch, doch wol müssend, so er ze loben jaur als ist;

2 so muß er doch arbaiten und schmerzen liden.

3 ¶ Zü dem andern maul merke und nim war, das der **Mellancolicus** ist forgsam und nit gerüstig, und sache wol[?];

4 warumb?

5 er nie gerüstig ist, wan er mangelt der sachen der getrüstkait[?];

6 … das ist offembar an den [Lahmen] …, als an den lemen, der [anders als] das gar gerüstig tier ist;

7 von der hize … ¶ Zü dem dritten maul ist ze wissen, das der **Mellancolicus** ist träg, und ame trägen lauf[f] …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

[1] Unhappy is the [melancholic] person;

[2] though he might well be at leisure, were the year favourable, yet he must labour and suffer pain.

[3] ¶ Secondly, note and mark that the **Melancholic** is anxious and not nimble, and [...];

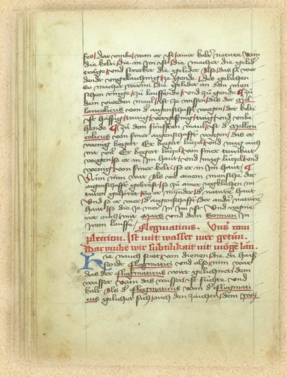
[4] why?

[5] he is never nimble, for he lacks the drive of [vigour];

[6] … this is plain in the lame, who — unlike the very nimble beast — [lack] the heat … ¶ Thirdly,

[7] be it known that the **Melancholic** is sluggish, and of a sluggish gait …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 43v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the Melancholic (concl., with the Choleric in comparison); then the Phlegmatic (verse + prose)

…[der] seel;

dar omb es, wan er ist amer kalt[en] nature, wan die kelti die in jm ist, die machet die gelid träge und unbe[h]ende;

als das die gelider an dem menschen … [s]ich ouch [s]o luczel regen, zü lauffende und zü [stehen?].

¶ Zü dem vierden maul ist ze wissen, das der **Mellancolicus** von der ougenstatt wegen der kelti ist … trurig,

verge[ss]ig, trucki und unbehende.

¶ Zü dem fünfften maul ist der **Colericus** von siner ougenstatt wegen, das er begert:

er begert [s]hützel, und mag auch nie vil;

… und ist [s]o luczel von siner kelti, [die] er in jm haut.

… ¶ Und … nauch den Sonnen … wan louffe.

¶ [red] **Flegmaticus.** ¶ [Vers:] Unser complexion ist mit wasser mer getan.

Darumbe wir subtilikait nit möge[n] lan. **¶ [Z] Ze mauch statt … die da haisst der** Flegmatici;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

12 und als jm woert:
13 das der **Flegmaticus** woet gelichmer dem wasser, wan das wasser ist füchte und kalt …;
14 als der Flegmaticus … gelich sich ouch den zaichen …

TRANSLATION

1 …[the] soul;
2 therefore [it is so], for he is of a cold nature, since the cold that is in him makes the limbs sluggish and unwieldy;
3 so that the limbs of [such] a person stir so little, to run or to [stand].
4 ¶ Fourthly, be it known that the **Melancholic**, by reason of his disposition [and] the cold, is sad,
5 forgetful, dry and unwieldy.
6 ¶ Fifthly, [as for] the **Choleric**, by reason of his disposition:
7 he desires little, and can do not much;
8 … and is so little [moved], because of the cold he has in him.
9 … ¶ And … according to the Sun … in its course.
10 ¶ **Phlegmatic.** ¶ [Verse:] "Our complexion is made more of water;
11 therefore we cannot do without subtlety." ¶ [The Phlegmatic] … is called the Phlegmatic;
12 and as it becomes him:
13 the **Phlegmatic** becomes like water, for water is moist and cold …;
14 like the Phlegmatic he also resembles the [watery] signs …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 44r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the Phlegmatic (genre-scene: a lutenist and a harpist); character in points

1 …[der Flegmaticus ist] der wässrigen zaichen, dem **Wasserman** und dem **Vische**, mit siner mature.

2 ¶ Zü dem andern maul merke:

3 das der **Flegmaticus** [ist] schlauffend vil;

4 und sind träg und schwär und vil[?];

5 und sind grob mit jren sinnen;

6 und sind rauch und wiß under dem antlüts;

7 und brait-bande gestalt;

8 und [s]o [haben] die planeten, der **mönen**, mit jrer mature [Gewalt darüber].

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…[the Phlegmatic belongs] to the watery signs, **Aquarius** and **Pisces**, with their nature.

¶ Secondly, note:

the **Phlegmatic** is very sleepy;

and they are sluggish and heavy and [dull];

and are coarse in their senses;

and are rough and pale of face;

and broad of build;

and the planet — the **Moon** — holds power over them with its nature.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 44v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the Sanguine (red heading + verse; genre-scene: a courtly couple)

[1] [red] **Sangwineus.** ¶ [Vers:] Unser complexion sind von lustes vil.

[2] Dar umbe houchmüetig sind wir allweg ane zil. ¶ **[D] Die dritten, das sind die** Sangwinei.

[3] Es ist ze wissen, das der **Sangwineus** ist milte;

[4] dar omb, wan er ist hizig und füchte;

[5] dar omb sind die lüte vast [freundlich/gütig];

[6] wan sie sind [warm];

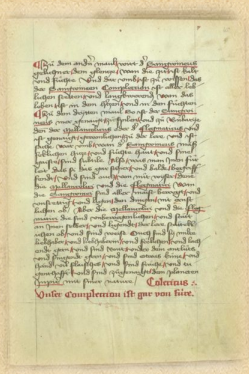
[7] und [s]o angesehen … das beleibt … und von der angeschafft der [h]izhait, das si sich allwegen [freuen].

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

[1] **Sanguine.** ¶ [Verse:] "Our complexion is full of pleasure;
[2] therefore we are always high-spirited, without measure." ¶ **The third, those are the** Sanguine.
[3] Be it known that the **Sanguine** is mild and generous;
[4] therefore, because he is hot and moist;
[5] therefore these people are very [amiable];
[6] for they are warm;
[7] and well-favoured … and by reason of the quality of [their] heat, they always rejoice.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 45r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the Sanguine (concl.; likened to spring; → Jupiter); then the Choleric begins (heading + verse)

1 [Z]ü dem andern maul woet der **Sangwineus** gelichmer dem [lenge / Frühling],

2 wan die [Zeit] [s]elbe [warm] und füchte;

3 das der **Sangwineus** Complexion ist alle [die] liblichen [Dinge], und langbroward,

4 wan das leben list in den hizen und in den füchten.

5 ¶ [Z]ü dem dritten maul:

6 es ist der **[Sangwineus]** mer gemaint zü [Tugend/Geselligkeit] … der [als] die **Mellancolicus** oder der **Flegmaticus**;

7 und ist genaigt gewonlichen zü der lere, und ist [s]arte;

8 war omb?

9 wan der **Sangwineus** maß hizig und füchte haut, und sin[e] haupt-[kräfte] sind subtile … die **Sangwinei** sind aller maust bewegt und unstettig … ¶ Aber die **Mellancolici** und die **Flegmatici**, die sind unbewegen, … und [s]tät an jnen [s]elber, und besunder [zu] der lere …, und sind woisse.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

10 ¶ Es sind si … liebhaber und holdsam und lachende;
11 und sind [r]oet under dem antlüts;
12 und [s]mptende gern;
13 und sind etwas kuner;
14 und hond vil …;
15 und sind raiche …;
16 und sind zügenant dem planeten **Jupiter** mit siner nature.
17 ¶ [red] **Colericus.** ¶ [Vers:] **Unser complexion ist gar von füre.**

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 Secondly, the **Sanguine** is like **spring**, for that season is itself warm and moist;

2 for the Sanguine's complexion is all lovely things, and long-lived, since life lies in heat and moisture.

3 ¶ Thirdly:

4 the **Sanguine** is more inclined to [virtue/sociability] than the Melancholic or the Phlegmatic;

5 and is usually inclined to learning, and is gentle.

6 Why?

7 Because the Sanguine has moderate heat and moisture, and his chief faculties are subtle … the Sanguine are the most active and unsettled … ¶ But the **Melancholic** and the **Phlegmatic** are unmoving, … steady in themselves, and especially [given] to learning …, and are wise.

8 ¶ They [the Sanguine] are lovers and gracious and laughing;

9 ruddy of face;

10 smiling readily;

11 somewhat bolder;

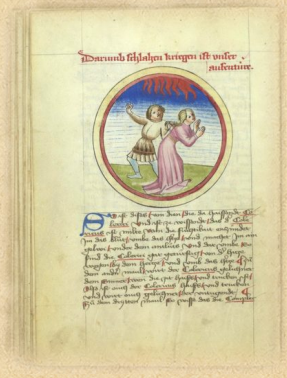
12 have much [...];

13 and are rich …;

14 and are assigned to the planet **Jupiter** with its nature.

15 ¶ **Choleric.** ¶ [Verse:] **"Our complexion is wholly of fire."**

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 45v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the Choleric (verse concl.; genre-scene: two men fighting before flames) — end of the temperaments

[Vers, Schluss:] **Darumb schlahen, kriegen ist unser auentiur.** ¶ [E] Es ist diß von den,
die da haissend die **Colerici**;
und ist ze wissen, das der **Colericus** ist [hitzig];
wan die [s]chnellikait enzündet jm das blüt, darumb [ist er] [s]chnel;
und machet jm am gelaw under dem antlüts.
Und der omb sind die **Colerici** gar genaigt, wan der hize wegen by dem herze, und omb das hize [s]chir.
¶ Zü dem andern maul woet der **Colericus** gelichmer dem **[sommer]**,
wan die [Zeit] [s]elbe gut[?] haisse und trucken ist;
als ist auch der **Colericus** haisse und trucken;
und woet auch gelichmer dem **[jugend]**.
¶ [Z]ü dem dritten maul [s]o wisse, das die **Complex**[ion] … (continues onto f. 46r)

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

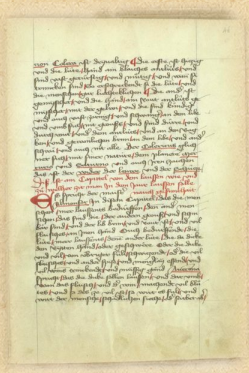
[1] [Verse, concl.:] **"Therefore striking and warring is our quest."** ¶ This is of those called the **Choleric**;
[2] and be it known that the **Choleric** is [hot];
[3] for [his] quickness inflames his blood, so [he is] quick;
[4] and it makes him sallow of face.
[5] And therefore the Choleric are very eager, by reason of the heat at the heart, and because the heat is fierce.
[6] ¶ Secondly, the **Choleric** is like **summer**, for that season is itself hot and dry;
[7] so too the Choleric is hot and dry;
[8] and is also like **youth**.
[9] ¶ Thirdly, know that the complexion[s] … (continues onto f.
[10] 46r) > End of the Four Complexions / Temperaments (f.
[11] 42v–45v). **All four are now transcribed page by page —** Melancholic (earth / autumn / old age / Saturn),
[12] **Phlegmatic** (water / winter / Moon), **Sanguine** (air / spring / Jupiter),
[13] and **Choleric** (fire / summer / youth) — each with its first-person verse and genre-scene.

EDITORIAL NOTE

End of the Four Complexions / Temperaments (f. 42v–45v). All four are now transcribed page by page — **Melancholic** (earth / autumn / old age / Saturn), **Phlegmatic** (water / winter / Moon), **Sanguine** (air / spring / Jupiter), and **Choleric** (fire / summer / youth) — each with its first-person verse and genre-scene.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

Bloodletting, Bathing & Remedies



folio 46r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

(end of the Choleric); then the bloodletting chapter begins

…[die Complex]ion [**Colera**] … ¶ Die [vierde] ist hizig;
und die lüte hand am blaw-gel[bes] anlüts;
und sind gar hizig und mütig;
und wan sie zormen sind, es zergehende si die lüte;
… har lichtelichen gän.
¶ Die andern ist [s]o gemyschet:
die hand am rout anlüts gemyschet mit der gilwi;
und die sind kündig;
und ouch vast genaigt zü schwermütigkait[?] an dem libe … und sind dürre und … der anlüts,
und an den ougen krank … Und ouch mit alle[m] der **Colericus** ylich mer mit siner mature dem planeten **Mars**;
und ouch [den] gauchen …, das ist der **Wider**, der **Lewe** und der **Schütze**.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

12 ¶ [red] **Diß ist am capitel von dem laussen, wie und zü welher zit man in dem jaur laussen sölle.** ¶ [E] Es spricht der maist[er] [Almansor]:

13 in disem capitel [steht], das die man [s]egan[?] mer laussent bedürffen dan ander man:

14 ¶ Das sind die, die an [robust] sind, das sind die lib [kräftig] und reut sind und vol-plutges man[?] sind.

15 Ouch bedürffen die lüte mer laussent dene ander[e] lüte:

16 die da dicke [an] den syten hand geschwere;

17 oder die dicke und vil an röbrige füll[e] gegangen sind;

18 als die vil flaisch gessen und … mengkly essen, und vil [wein] trinckent, und müssig sind.

19 Und [die], die da [vollblütig] sind, das die dicke böllen laussent;

20 und der omb:

21 wan das blut, [wenn] vil blibet und [s]o vil es ze füll[e] wirt, [s]o [bekommt] der mensche siechtum und [s]ieber.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …the complexion [**Cholera**] … ¶ The [fourth, the Choleric,] is hot;

2 and these people have a pale-yellow face, and are very hot and quick to anger;

3 and when they are angry, the people [lose themselves];

4 … they go about easily.

5 ¶ The others are mixed:

6 they have a red face mixed with yellow;

7 and they are clever, and also much inclined to melancholy[?] in the body;

8 … and are lean and sallow of face, and weak in the eyes … And in all things the **Choleric** most resembles,

9 by its nature, the planet **Mars**;

10 and also the signs …, that is the **Ram (Aries)**, the **Lion (Leo)** and the **Archer (Sagittarius)**.

11 ¶ This is a chapter on bloodletting:

12 how and at what time of year one should let blood. ¶ The master [Almansor] says:

13 this chapter [tells] that some men need bloodletting more than other men:

14 ¶ Those are they who are robust, whose bodies are strong and ruddy, and who are full-blooded.

15 These people also need to let blood more than others:

16 those who often have ulcers in the sides;

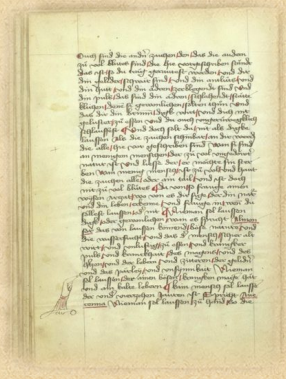
17 or who have gone to excess and superfluity — who eat much meat and many foods, drink much [wine], and are idle.

18 And those who are full-blooded should let blood often;

19 and why?

20 Because the blood, when too much remains and becomes excess, makes a person fall sick and feverish.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 46v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

signs of plethora; contraindications to bloodletting (Almansor, Avicenna) — with a marginal pointing-hand

1 Ouch sind die andern zaichen, [das] die andern zü vol blutes sind, die hie vorgeschriben staund:

2 das ist, du [wirst schwer / grawest] werden;

3 und … [die] salde grawe sind, und am anlüts;

4 und din haut;

5 und dim adern … sind;

6 und dim puls, das din adern [härter] geschlagdt … dene si gewonlichen thün;

7 und das du … jucke wirst;

8 und dich [hast] gelust zü essen;

9 und du ouch … reglos[?];

10 und doch sol[t] du nit als drisse laussen, als die zaichen [s]embar sin[d], die alle hie vor geschriben sind;

11 wan si sind am meisten manschen, der zü vol und böser nature ist;

12 und liesse, [so] möchte sin [eher] [s]terben.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

13 Wan mengk mensch ist zü vol, und haut die zaichen alle, aber am tail, und ist doch nit zü vol blutes.

14 ¶ Du [folge] amer woisen [Rat]:

15 wo es die siech[heit] … und dim leben [in Gefahr], und [er] kranke[r] [ist],

16 [um] mer [sollst] du [vorsichtig sein, vor] du [s]ellest laussen.

17 ¶ … wan es spricht **Almansor**:

18 [wer] böse[r] nature, und [an] der wasser-sucht;

19 und [wer] der mensche … alt … und [hat] kranker puls;

20 und kranck-hait … und [schwaches] gehör;

21 … ¶ [N]iemand sol laussen, der einen bösen krancken mag[en];

22 und am kalte leber.

23 ¶ Kain mensche sol laussen, der … [s]wachen dauwen ist.

24 [S]o spricht **Avicenna**:

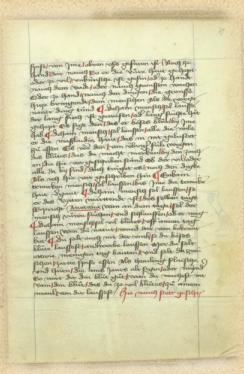
25 Niemand sol laussen zü hend, [s]o die …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

There are also the other signs that someone is full-blooded, written above:
that is, you grow [heavy/grey];
and the complexion grows grey, in the face;
and the hair;
and the veins [stand out / are hidden];
and the pulse — that your veins beat [harder] than they usually do;
and that you grow itchy;
and have a craving to eat;
and are also restless;
and yet you should not bleed so boldly, [even] when the signs seem present, all written above;
for these are mostly people of full and bad humour, and to bleed them might rather kill them.
For many a person is full-blooded and has all the signs, but only partly, and is not truly plethoric.
¶ Follow a wise counsel:
where the sickness [threatens] his life and he is weaker, the more cautious you should be before letting blood.
¶ … for **Almansor** says:
[bleed not] one of bad humour, or the dropsical;
nor the person who is old …, who has a weak pulse and sickness …, and weak hearing …;
¶ No one should let blood who has a bad, sick stomach and a cold liver.
¶ No one should let blood who is of weak digestion.
Thus **Avicenna** says:
no one should let blood at once, when the … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 47r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

further contraindications; preparation before bloodletting (Avicenna): purge, then thin the blood with gentle foods

…[der magen] von jme … geschwen ist … dar nauch … der böse[s] haut gehept, dar zü vol [unkraft?] ist …;

oder ze hand nauch den dingen, die geschwere bewysend den menschen, als der [plethorischen] dinge sind.

¶ Dehein mensche sol laussen, der lang siech geliegen ist, und [s]o lang sieche hat gehept;

es ist, [weil] er böse blüt[s] jme gehept.

¶ Das dehein mensche sol laussen, dieweile er … [das Gelüst] haut, das in[en] mit gelust zü essen [treibt];

es ist von röbrige füll[e] wegen des blutes … ¶ Kain mensche sol laussen, dem die trumbe[?] haut geschadt[?].

¶ Dehein mensche sol laussen [zu] der zit …, [an] welher zit [am] selben tage.

¶ [E] Es spricht **Avicenna**:

wan an dem tage sol der mensche etwas trincken und [s]chlaffen, als [s]o er maug.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

10 ¶ Dehein mensche sol vil blutes off amen tag laussen, wan die nature [s]o von [Kraft] beroebt wirt.

11 ¶ Du solt auch nit zu der zit, [s]o du böse blüt[s] haust, laussen, aber du solt die selben zit mit arznie bürgieren;

12 und solt din krankhait [s]o zarte [vertreiben] … und grüni kruet, die linen sauwes[?], als feigen, dattlen, mund-…;

13 [s]o [bereitest] du im blüt zu, das du machest aine raine dünn[e] flüsse in dem blüt, das du, [s]o vol blutes,

14 zü amen maul von dir laussen.

15 ¶ Hie nauch [s]tat geschriben:

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …[the stomach] is swollen by it … thereafter … who has had bad [blood], and is full of [weakness] …;

2 or immediately after the things that show swellings in a person, as are the [plethoric] conditions.

3 ¶ No one should let blood who has long lain sick and has had a long illness;

4 for it is because he has had bad blood in him.

5 ¶ No one should let blood while he has the craving that drives him to eat;

6 it is by reason of the excessive fullness of the blood … ¶ No one should let blood whom the [dropsy] has harmed.

7 ¶ No one should let blood at the [forbidden] time …, whatever hour, on that same day.

8 ¶ **Avicenna** says:

9 on that day the person should drink a little and sleep, as much as he can.

10 ¶ No one should let much blood in one day, for nature is thereby robbed of strength.

11 ¶ Nor should you let blood at the time when your blood is bad;

12 rather, at that time you should purge with medicine, and gently drive off your illness …;

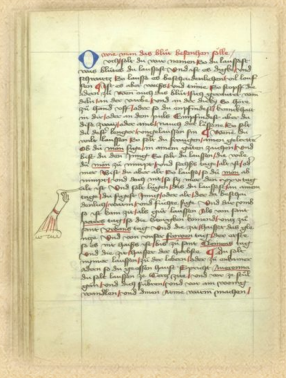
13 and [eat] green herbs that loosen [the bowels], such as figs, dates, [and the like];

14 thus you prepare the blood, making a pure thin flux in it, so that you, being full-blooded,

15 may let blood from yourself at one time.

16 ¶ Hereafter is written:

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 47v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

"How one should examine the blood"; the right time (waxing moon, good sign; seasonal calendar; Avicenna)

[red] **[W]ie man das blüt beschowen sölle.** ¶ [V]orsihst du wol nemen, [s]o du laussest, was blüt[s] du laussest:

ist es dick, [s]o du laussest, und [s]chwartz, so laußt es bas gehan, dann [es zu stopfen];

[lass] vil lauffen.

¶ Ist es aber waiss und trübe, so stopff die ader;

und [beurteile] das blüt[s] … nauch der varbe und an der dicki;

es höre zü hand …;

[s]o du empfindest, [dass das gute] blut in die ader [kommt] …;

aber [wenn] du [s]ie zwoy ader amel nauch gut[em] lassen, [s]o solt du [es] [s]o lang beschowen lassen sin.

¶ Wann du wolt laussen, [s]o solt du fragen amer wisen:

ob du [der] mön siest in amem güten zaichen;

… [s]o solt du laussen dieweile du [der] mön zü-nimmet, und [an den] grosse[n] tage[n] sol[t] [es] sin;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

12 … aber [bleibe] nit [bei dem] laussen, [s]o du [der] mön ab-nimmet;

13 und doch müssen si mer den[n] xxiiij tag alt sin.

14 ¶ Und der omb [s]o ist bass zü laussen:

15 als von sant Steffans tag ist, [wenn] die Evangelisten kommendt, untz zü sant Johans tag,

16 und [an] die zü ze haisser tag[en] …;

17 und von unser frowen tag, die obriste, es ist zü sant … *(seasonal list repeated)* ¶ [Almansor] … und [in] der zü haissen zit der herbste:

18 du solt nymer laussen zü der leberen, aber zü andern [Adern].

19 Es spricht **Avicenna**:

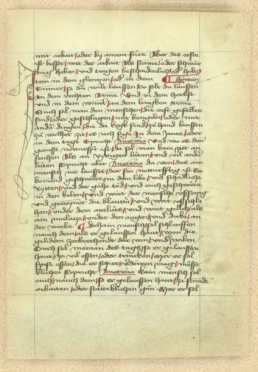
20 du solt laussen ze [rechter] zit, und war ze [s]il gän, und dich [s]chonen, und vor allem würckung [meiden] … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

How one should examine the blood. ¶ Take good heed, when you let blood, what blood you let:
if it runs thick and black, then let it flow on, rather than stopping it;
let much run.
¶ But if it is white and turbid, then stop the vein;
and judge the blood by its colour and its thickness;
it should cease at once …;
when you perceive that the good blood comes into the vein …;
but if you bleed once or twice for good measure, you should have it examined [each time].
¶ When you wish to bleed, ask a wise rule:
whether you see the moon in a good sign;
… then you should bleed while the moon is waxing, and on the long [waxing] days;
… but do not keep bleeding when the moon is waning;
and yet it must be more than 24 days old.
¶ And therefore it is better to bleed from **St Stephen's day** (when the Evangelists come [after Christmas]) until **St John's day**, and on the hotter days;
and from **Our Lady's day** (the highest [Assumption]);
it is to St … *(the seasonal list is repeated)* ¶ [Almansor] … and in the hot season of autumn:
you should never bleed at the **liver**, but at other [veins].
Avicenna says:
you should bleed at the right time, take good care [to rest], spare yourself, and above all avoid exertion … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 48r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

which arm/vein; bleeding when necessary; the dangers of NOT bleeding; aftercare (Avicenna)

…mit arbait, oder by amen füre.
Aber das beste ist [s]o [s]chwär arbait [meide];
… und [s]o … das [s]o halten von dem gelaussen ist in dem … ¶ [E] Es woere du wölte laussen,
[s]o solt du laussen an dem rechten arme, und in dem höchsten;
und [an] dem lingsten arme.
¶ Ouch sol man den menschen, die ee gefallen sind, … zü hand laussen, zü welher zit es noch sye,
in dem jaur oder in dem tage.
¶ Es spricht **Avicenna**:
und [wenn] es [s]o der ganze notwesst ist, da sol man kein zile [setzen],
[s]o lange als in [fiebrigen?] lüten … ¶ Es spricht aber **Avicenna**:
da von, [wenn] am mensche, der sin notwesst [ist zu lassen, nicht lässt], [s]o kommen geschwore in dem libe,
und [s]chädlichu reitern;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

13 und der gäste tod;
14 und auch geschwore in dem kelen;
15 und woet der mensche [siech], und gewirmet die [gelbsucht?];
16 und woet gelb, als am m[en]sch, und [ist] [s]iech an der [s]ucht.
17 ¶ Dehein mensch sol[t] laussen nauch dem als er gelaussen haut, wan die geliden [sich erholen] … und [die] varben;
18 doch sol man [am] des tages … gantze vil offt [essen];
19 … es sol [s]ere essen, als die [Verdauung] döwen mag.
20 ¶ [Es] [s]pricht **Avicenna**:
21 kein mensche sol ouch nauch dem [als] es ge-laussen haut … arbaiten oder spazieren gän.
22 ¶ Wer es sol[t] …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …with work, or by a fire.

2 But the best is to avoid heavy work …;

3 the [rule] about bloodletting is in the … ¶ If you would bleed, bleed on the **right arm**, at the highest [vein];

4 and on the **left arm**.

5 ¶ Also, people who have fallen ill should be bled at once — with the proper [instruments] — at whatever time it may be, in the year or the day.

6 ¶ **Avicenna** says:

7 when it is wholly necessary, set no delay, as with feverish people … ¶ But **Avicenna** also says:

8 that if a person who needs bleeding is not bled, then ulcers arise in the body, and harmful fevers, and sudden death;

9 and also ulcers in the throat;

10 and the person grows sick, and gets jaundice, and turns yellow like a sick man, and is sick of the dropsy.

11 ¶ No one should let blood [again] after he has bled, until the limbs recover and the colour returns;

12 yet on the [bleeding] day one should eat much, often;

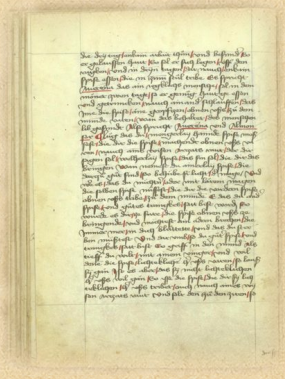
13 … he should eat well, as much as the digestion can manage.

14 ¶ **Avicenna** says:

15 no one should work or go walking after he has bled.

16 ¶ If it should …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 48v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

post-bleeding diet (rest, light & sweet foods, electuaries; Avicenna, Almansor)

[Wer es solt]e, der drü tag[e] kain arbait thün;
und bas ist, [s]o er gelaussen haut, [s]o sol er sich ruowen [und] legen;
und in dr[e]in tagen dar-nauch kain[e] grosse spise, die in stül tribe.
¶ Es spricht **Avicenna**:
das am reglichs mensche sol in den monat zwen tag[e], [s]o er gemig haut, ze essen und [ge]trincken;
und [an] mauch ander[n sol er sich] laussen, [so] das jme die spise [s]ine geschw[e]re abnem[en] [lasse] …;
wan das behaltet den lib gesunde.
¶ Als spricht **Avicenna** und **Almansor**:
pflüg, das du mengerlay hande spise [s]o ess[e]st, die die [Geschwulst] machend abnemen …,
nauch mauch woisen argats raut, das die spise[n] sol[len] woelhcerlay …;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

11 wan nemest du am [schwere] spise, die [s]warg zu [verdauen] sind, [s]o belibe si liegen [im] mage[n] …;

12 die selben spise müsst …;

13 aber [?] rosse[?] zu dem münde [Bedeutung unsicher — **nicht** „leichte Kost";

14 s.

15 Reading-Note].

16 Es [ist] das alles spise und [g]ütis tranck:

17 [wird] es [s]art böse, [s]o woelle [man] [s]ücze spise …, und [nehme] gut[e] spise, latwerg-[en], und gütis tranck.

18 ¶ Und der omb:

19 [wenn] die gut[e] spise und [Getränk] [s]art böse [wird] … und [die] spise [soll] luchteklage …,

20 nauch amer wis[en] argats raut;

21 und sol [man] den gü[t]en getranck … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

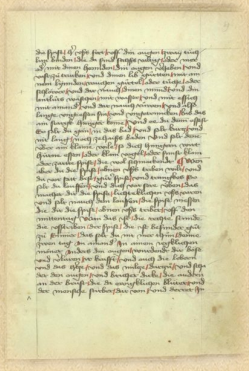
[1] [Whoever bleeds] should do no work for three days;
[2] and it is better that, once he has bled, he rest and lie down;
[3] and in the three days after bleeding [take] no heavy food that moves the bowels.
[4] ¶ **Avicenna** says:
[5] an orderly person should, within the month, on two days — when he has enough — eat and drink [his fill],
[6] and on other [days] keep moderate, so that the food makes his ulcers abate … for that keeps the body healthy.
[7] ¶ Thus **Avicenna** and **Almansor** say:
[8] take care to eat **various kinds of food** that make [the swelling] abate,
[9] following many a wise physician's counsel — the foods should be varied;
[10] for if you take heavy food, hard to digest, it lies in the stomach … such food must be avoided;
[11] rather prefer **light fare**.
[12] And as for all such food and good drink:
[13] if it gradually turns bad, then choose **sweet food** … and take good food, **electuaries (latwerge)**,
[14] and good drink.
[15] ¶ Therefore, when the good food and drink gradually turns bad … the food should be **easily digestible** …,
[16] according to a wise physician's counsel;
[17] and one should [take] the good drink … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

EDITORIAL NOTE

Reading note (rosse / münde). A flagged audit query proved right: my gloss "*rosse zu dem münde*" is **not** supported by the high-res master. The lower part of f. 48v is a passage on **therapeutic vomiting** after over-eating — "*greiff in den mund als tieff du wolt mit amen vinger … [r]oss lauß sy gan*" (reach into the mouth as deep as you like with a finger and let [the food] come back out); "*rosse / [r]oss*" here is the particle *heraus* ("out"), not a noun for "fare." The "light fare" gloss is withdrawn and the phrase flagged for collation.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 49r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

post-bleeding regimen: keep warm, wash with water & vinegar, mild bath, light food at midday

1 …[du] sol[t] [die] spise [leicht halten];

2 … [die] ougen … [mit einem] tuch umbinden;

3 und [habe] frische sal[bei]y;

4 oder … das man [die] ougen … in den ougen [behüte], und vast zü trucken;

5 und dim lib [warte] mit amen lynnen tuch … oder [s]olwen;

6 und … [wasche das Glied] mit wasser und mit essich …, und [es] mag zu warm;

7 und … die lange zit essen;

8 … [nimm nicht, dass] am starcke arznie kome;

9 und [wenn] du [zum] essen sol[t], so [s]olt du gän in das bad, und [s]olt baden — nit zü haisse baden;

10 und sol dene über am kleine wile in dich genussen, oder weniger;

11 … vil grüne[s] essen, oder klein … oder sünst klein[e] der gaste spise, die wol [s]chmackende sind.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

12 ¶ Wan [du] über die spise habend hast … und du voer sat bist, [so] [s]ol du [aufhören];

13 … das machet die spise lichteklagen … und sol mauch nach dem laussen die spise messen.

14 ¶ Die spise, [die] lichteklagen … [zu nehmen ist] [s]o [an] den mittentag, wan das ist die rechte stunde,

15 die räthbar der spise.

16 ¶ Die beste zit zü essen … zwen tag[e], ane in amen [ordentlichen] monet …;

17 anders [schaden] … die böse und [s]warze krafft … und auch die leben, und das gehör, und das milge, … und [die] ougen;

18 und brunger [s]iebe, die andern an der brust;

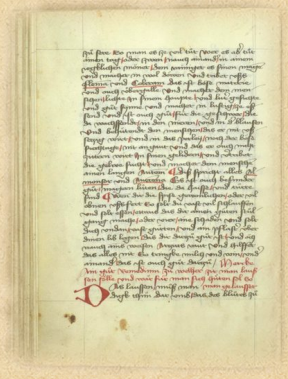
19 … und der mensche [s]iebet … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…keep the food light;
bind the eyes with a cloth;
have fresh sage;
protect the eyes and keep them very dry;
tend your body with a linen cloth, or salves;
and wash [the limb] with water and vinegar — it may be warm;
and eat moderately over a long time;
do not let a strong medicine follow at once;
and when you would eat, go to the bath and bathe — not too hot;
and then, after a little while, take some food, or less;
eat plenty of greens, or small light tasty fare.
¶ When you have eaten and are already full, stop;
that keeps the food easily digested;
and after bleeding one should eat in moderation.
¶ Easily-digested food is best taken at **midday**, for that is the right and most advisable hour to eat.
¶ The best time to eat … on [a couple of] days, separately, in an orderly month …;
otherwise the bad, black humour harms the liver, the hearing, the spleen … and the eyes,
and brings fever — others [feel it] at the chest …;
and the person grows feverish … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 49v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

regimen concl. (foods that aid digestion & drive out phlegm/cholera; Avicenna); transition to the next chapter

1 …[die Speise zu rechter Zeit];
2 es man es ee sol[t] tün, oder es ab tün … in amen [ordentlichen] monet;
3 dan wirmet es sin[en] mage und machet in wol döwen;
4 und tribet rosse flema und **Coleram**, das ist böse materie;
5 und [hilft] ouch [gegen] über-falle;
6 und machet den men[schen] [klar] in sinem [s]haupte, und [gut von] gesichte, und gut[er] sinne;
7 und machet in [leichter];
8 und ist ouch [gut gegen] die [s]warze, die da wachssende sin[d] …;
9 und behüttet den menschen … [vor] der böse[n] prästtage …;
10 und tribet die … sucht;
11 und machet den menschen amen langen athem.
12 ¶ Diß spricht alles **Avicenna**.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

13 ¶ Es ist auch besunder gut warm[en] lüten, die da haisse und [feucht] sind.

14 ¶ Wen [du] die spise gewonlichen [nimmst] … [s]o solt du vast vil [s]chlaffen;

15 und [s]olt essen [Speisen], die amen güten [s]tülgang machen, oder zwen, ane [s]chaden;

16 und [s]olt dich rüwen und in pflag;

17 … und [folge] mauch amer waisen argats raut;

18 … [s]o trincke milich und win;

19 das ist auch gut dazu.

20 ¶ [W]…[eine Frage,] zü welher zit man laussen sölle, und was man [s]ich güten sol[t] … ¶ [blue D] Das laussen miss[t] man, wan man gelaussen;

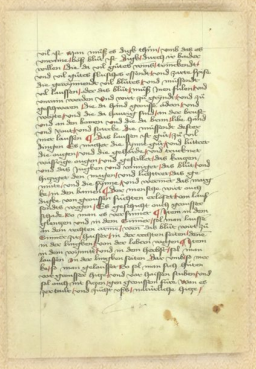
21 [man] [s]ich tün dar omb, das des blutes zü [viel ist] …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …[take the food in due time];
2 one should do it beforehand, or leave it off …;
3 in an orderly month — then it warms the stomach and makes it digest well;
4 and **drives out phlegm and cholera**, which are bad matter;
5 and helps against excess;
6 and makes the person **clear in the head, good of sight and senses**, and lighter;
7 and is also good against the **black bile** that grows [within];
8 and protects the person from bad ailments …;
9 and drives out the [cough/]sickness;
10 and gives the person **a long breath**.
11 ¶ All this **Avicenna** says.
12 ¶ It is also especially good for warm people who are hot and moist.
13 ¶ When you take the food as usual … you should sleep much;
14 and eat foods that make a good bowel movement, or two, without harm;
15 and rest, and be well cared for;
16 … and follow a wise physician's counsel;
17 … drink milk and wine — that too is good for it.
18 ¶ [A question:] at what time one should let blood, and what one should beware of … ¶ One measures bloodletting:
19 when one has bled, one does it because the blood is in excess … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 50r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the virtues of bloodletting; seasonal/positional rules (right arm in spring/summer, left in winter)

[V]il ist [es], man müss es dick thün, omb das es ze vil böse blüt ist;

dick, [s]o … der [s]willen da [sind];

und [die], [die] vil gütes flüsses essende und harte spise, die gewinnend vil blütes und müssend wol laussen …;

und woet zü gesehende, und zü geschwären, [die] da [s]ich rüsten an der brust …;

und die da [schwere] libe hand …, die müssende [s]ester mer laussen.

¶ Das laussen ist gut zü vil dingen:

es machet die [Sinne] gut;

und lüttert die ougen und die gelide;

und trucknet wässrige ougen;

und ge-stillet das [Jucken?] und das [Sieche];

und reiniget das blüt;

und tribet den [bösen Saft];

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

13 und liecht-würt das, [das] ze [s]chwer get den magen;

14 und [reiniget] die sinne;

15 und woerme[t] das marg;

16 … und der mensche woet auch dick von grossen füchten erlöset, von lauffende[n] flüchten.

17 ¶ Es geschiget ouch grosser [s]chade, [wenn] man es woer immer.

18 ¶ Wan man es … in dem [Frühling] und in dem Sommer, sol man laussen an den rechten arme;

19 wan das blüt woet … gehaissen in der rechten siten, und in der lungen, von der lebern …;

20 in dem wintmonet sol man laussen an dem lingsten siten …;

21 es sol man [s]ich güten vor grosser hize, und vor haissen [s]tuben;

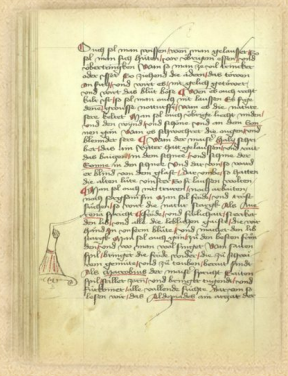
22 und sol auch nit gegen grossen füre, wan es … hize.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

Often it is necessary to do it frequently, because there is too much bad blood — often,
when the swellings are present;
and those who eat much rich and hard food gain much blood and must let blood well;
… and [the surplus] becomes visible, turning to ulcers in the chest …;
and those who have heavy bodies must let blood the sooner and more.
¶ **Bloodletting is good for many things:** it makes the [senses] good;
clears the eyes and the limbs;
dries watery eyes;
stills the [itching] and the [sickness];
cleanses the blood;
drives out the [bad humour];
relieves what burdens the stomach;
cleanses the senses;
warms the marrow;
… and a person is also often freed of great humours and running fluxes.
¶ It also does great harm if done wrongly.
¶ When [bleeding] in **spring and summer**, one should bleed at the **right arm**,
for the blood gathers in the right side, in the lungs, from the liver …;
in the **winter-month** one should bleed on the **left** side …;
and one should beware of great heat and hot rooms, and not sit by a big fire, for it stirs up the heat.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 50v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

aftercare cautions (Haly); music-therapy: joy, song and string-playing dispel anger and ward off epilepsy (Avicenna) — marginal pointing-hand

Ouch sol man woissen:
wan man gelaussen, so sol man [s]ich hüten vor [r]obrigen essen und [s]obit-essen.
¶ Wan [s]o man ze vil … esset, [s]o [verderben] ze hand die adern … und woet das blüt böse.
¶ Wen es auch ze vast bewegt, so sol man ouch nit laussen …;
wan es die nature sere zelet.
¶ Man sol ouch [r]obrige hize miden, und den wind und schne, und [die] Sonnen;
wan es schwer-get die ougen und [blendet] da[s] sere.
¶ Wan der maister **Haly** spricht:
bas ist im rechter zit gelaussen …;
und [von] dem glast [wird] er blind.
Dar omb [s]o hatten sich die alten lüte sunst [vor dem] laussen.
¶ Man sol ouch nit [müde] [s]in nach arbaiten …;
man sol fröde und trost süchen, [s]o woet die nature starck.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

14 Als **Avicenna** spricht:

15 [Z]orn schade[t] und [s]chwächt den lib, und alle die [edlen] gaiste die wir hand an unserm blüte,

16 und machet den lib [s]chwach.

17 Wan, man sol [sich wenden] zü dem [s]aiten-[s]piel, und [zu] dem, was man wol singet;

18 wan [s]aiten-spiel bringet die fröde wider, die zü [zerstreut ist] vom gemüte, und [vertreibt so] böser.

19 ¶ Als **Avicenna** der maist[er] spricht:

20 [s]aiten-spiel vertribet zorn, und bringet tugendt, und für-kömet die [v]allend[e] sucht;

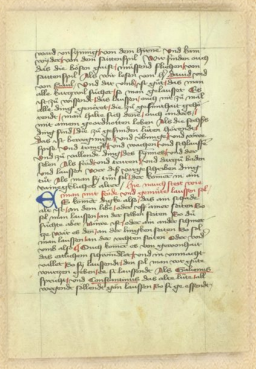
21 dar omb [s]o lesen wir, das **[David]**[?] am arzat [s]uchen …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

Also know:
when one has bled, one should beware of **excessive eating and overeating**.
¶ For if one eats too much, the veins are at once [spoiled] … and the blood turns bad.
¶ When the body is too agitated, one should also not bleed …;
for it sorely consumes nature.
¶ One should also avoid excessive heat, wind, snow, and the sun;
for it burdens the eyes and blinds them sorely.
¶ As Master **Haly** says:
it is better to bleed at the right time …;
and from the glare one may go blind.
Therefore the old folk were careful about bleeding.
¶ One should also not be [weary] after work …;
one should **seek joy and comfort, so that nature grows strong**.
As **Avicenna** says:
anger harms and weakens the body, and all the noble spirits we have in our blood, and makes the body weak.
Therefore one should turn to **string-playing**, and to whatever one sings well;
for string-playing brings back the joy scattered from the mind, and so drives away evil [thoughts].
¶ As Master **Avicenna** says:
string-playing drives away anger, brings virtue, and wards off the falling sickness (epilepsy);
therefore we read that **[David]** sought a physician / played [for Saul] … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 51r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

music & the evil spirit (David/Saul); the "non-naturals" of health; bleed the affected side; guard against fainting (Galen, Constantine)

1 …[der böse gaist wich] von dem [s]hone[?];
2 und kam wider von dem [s]aitenspil.
3 Wie finden auch, das die bösen gaiste entwichend von dem [Spielen], von [s]aitenspil,
4 als wir lesen von dem **David** und von **Saul**.
5 Und der omb ist gut, das man alle kurzwil süchet, [wenn] man gelausset.
6 Als ist es ze wissende, das laussen auch ne zü mal alle ding [bewirkt], die zü gesundthait gehörende;
7 man halte sich gerne, ouch in dem, mit amen geordnetten leben.
8 Als die grosse ding sind, die zü gesundthait der lüten hörende:
9 das ist [luft];
10 und übermäsg;
11 und [rechte] spise und tranck;
12 und wachen und schlauffen;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

13 und zü-vallende ding;
14 und [s]in[er] [s]ele, als fröd und truwen;
15 und zü [den] baden;
16 und [zum] laussen.
17 … [s]o man [s]i [befolgt], [s]o komet [man] in am raine-geblüetes alter.
18 ¶ Hie nauch stat, wie man [nach] dem [Leib] und gemütel laussen sol.
19 ¶ [E] Es komet dicke als, das am [s]chade in den libe [ist], oder [Schmerz an] amer siten;
20 so sol man laussen an der selben siten, [wo] du [s]üchst … oder am andern siten … denn an die lingsten siten,
21 so sol man laussen an der rechten siten … und omb [es] komet von gewonhait,
22 das [ettliche] [s]chwinda und in onmacht vallet, [wenn] si laussende, den sol man [trösten] vor onmacht;
23 [und] geben si laussende, [wenn] si essende [sind].
24 ¶ Als **Galienus** spricht und **Constantinus**:
25 das alte lüte [und schwache] söllen[d] [s]e laussen, [wenn] si ge-essende.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…[the evil spirit departed] and came away from the string-playing.

We also find that the evil spirits flee from playing, from string-playing, as we read of **David and Saul**.

And therefore it is good to seek all diversion when one has bled.

¶ Be it known that bloodletting alone does not secure all the things that pertain to health;

one should gladly keep, in this too, an ordered life.

For these are the great things that pertain to people's health:

air;

the right measure;

proper food and drink;

waking and sleeping;

repletion and evacuation;

the soul's passions (joy and [trust]);

baths;

and bloodletting — so that one reaches a pure-blooded old age.

¶ Here follows **how one should let blood according to the body and the disposition.** ¶ It often happens that there is a harm in the body, or pain in one side;

then one should bleed on **the same side** where you feel it;

… or on the other side …;

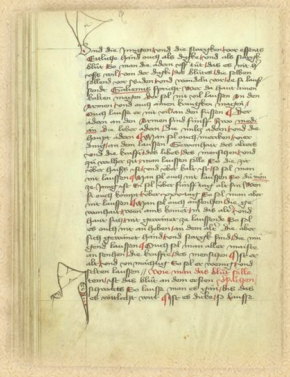
and because it often happens that some grow dizzy and faint when bleeding,

one should comfort them against fainting, and give [food] during bleeding when they are eating.

¶ As **Galen** and **Constantine** say:

old and weak people should bleed only when they have eaten.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 51v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the five veins of the arm (Galen); timing by age, strength and the moon; → "how to examine the blood"

…und die jungen und die starcken, [die] vor essens [voll Blut sind], hand ouch als dicke und als vil blüt,

[s]o man die adern uff-tüt, das es mit vil [Gewalt] wil[l], von der dicki des blütes;

die selben [s]ollend vor [bedacht sein] … welhe [s]i lauffende.

¶ **Galienus** spricht:

war du haut amen kalten magen, der sol mit vil laussen an den armen;

und [bei] amen [aufgeblähten] magen.

¶ Ouch laussen er mit willen [an] den füssen.

¶ Der adern an den armen sind fünf:

zwo **median**;

die **leber-aden**;

die **milz-aden**;

und die **houpt-aden**.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

13 ¶ Man sol auch merken vor jm laussen die gewonhait des alters, und die krafft des libes des menschen,

14 und zü welher zit man laussen sölle:

15 [ist] die zit über[aus] haisse, [s]o sol man nit laussen;

16 man sol ouch [nur] laussen [wenn] du[r] mön ze-nimmet.

17 ¶ Es sol über fünf[t] tag alt sin …;

18 wan man sol ouch [nach] der gewonhait [laussen];

19 wan man komet in das alter und [Siechtum] gewinet, [es] gelaussende [durch Aderlass mildert],

20 [s]o sol es auch mit am sin in dem alter.

21 Die aber [s]ich gewinet [und] starck sind, die müzend laussen.

22 ¶ Ouch sol man aller maiste die krafft des menschen messen …;

23 [und] [s]ie [in] woermes und [s]chon laussen.

24 ¶ [red] **Wie man das blüt [s]olle [be]schowen**, und an den ersten [Stich]:

25 [s]o lausse man es ze hand … und [s]o ze hand es [s]iechast lausse …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…the young and the strong, full of blood before eating, also have so often and so much blood that,
when one opens the vein, it tries to spurt out with force, from the thickness of the blood;
such people should first take care which vein they open.
¶ **Galen** says:
whoever has a cold stomach should bleed much at the arms;
and for a bloated stomach.
¶ He may also willingly bleed at the feet.
¶ The veins of the arm are five:
the two *median* veins, the *liver* vein, the *spleen* vein,
and the *head* vein. ¶ Before bleeding one should also consider the habit of one's age,
the bodily strength of the person, and the right time:
if the season is too hot, one should not bleed;
one should bleed [only] while the moon is waxing.
¶ The moon should be more than five days old …;
one should bleed according to habit;
and as one comes into age and gains sickness — which bleeding eases — it should be done in moderation in old age;
but the accustomed and strong must bleed.
¶ Above all one should measure the strength of the person … and bleed them warmly and gently.
¶ **How one should examine the blood**, and at the first stroke:
let it flow at once … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 52r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

phlebotomy scene; examining the blood; rubric "On bloodletting: who should do it, to whom forbidden" (Almansor)

…[lass] es [rinnen] bis das es trinne wol.

¶ Doch mit der lenge, bis das dem menschen kain [s]chade da von kome.

¶ Man sol ouch das blüt [s]chowen vast;

doch zimpt es, [es] am [s]chowen:

ist es waiß und [r]ain, so ist es am zaichen, das es wol ge-lobet ist.

¶ Ist es aber blüt und [über] galle, und [s]chwartz, so … ist es böse;

[es] ist am zaichen, das es [über-]warm [Blut] ist.

¶ Man sol es ouch [s]chürgen, wan es [s]taut …:

ist es böse blüt.

¶ [red] **Von laussen, welch mensch das tün sölle, und welhem das verbotten sye.** ¶ [E] Der maister **Almansor** spricht, das …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…let it flow until it runs well.

¶ Yet with moderation, until no harm comes to the person thereby.

¶ One should also examine the blood closely;

it is fitting to examine it:

if it is **white and pure**, that is a sign it is good.

¶ But if it is **blood mixed with [excess] bile, and black**, then it is bad — a sign that it is over-warm blood.

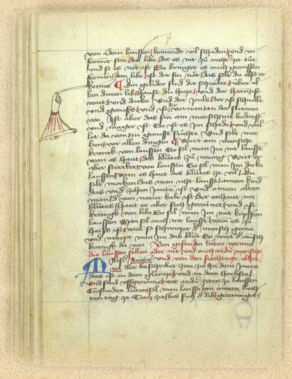
¶ One should also stir/test it as it stands:

[then one sees if] it is bad blood.

¶ On bloodletting:

which person should do it, and to whom it is forbidden. ¶ **Master** Almansor says that … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 52v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

harms of ill-timed bleeding; indications (the lean & sick; the over-full; the cold old man) — marginal pointing-hand

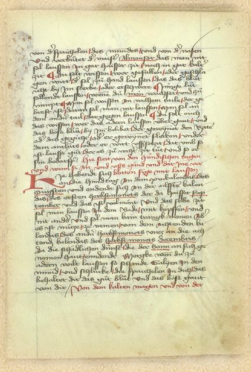
1 …von dem laussen komendt vil [s]chaden …;
2 dar es mit zü rechter zit tüt, [hilft es];
3 und [s]o es nit [recht] ist, so bringet es auch grossen [s]chaden dem libe, [entgegen dem] [s]o sin nature pflegt.
4 ¶ … [Geschwüre] … und ist [s]chwer, wan man kan der [nicht entgehen].
5 ¶ Ist aber das [in] am menschen, [der] mager ist, so ist es sin [s]chade …;
6 [findest] du … sin grosse [s]üchte, und [er] mager ist, an siner siten [eine] [s]üchte,
7 so sol man jm mit laussen, wan es haut des blütes zü weng …;
8 aber [ist das Blut] [s]warz vom laussen, so sol man jm dicke laussen, wan es haut des blütes ze vil.
9 ¶ [Die], [die] recht laussen:
10 und amen alten man, [der] von [s]iner [Natur] kalt ist …;
11 haut es aber [s]üchte, [so] gewinet mit … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …from bloodletting come many harms …;
2 if it is done at the right time it helps;
3 but if not done rightly it also brings great harm to the body, against what its nature requires.
4 ¶ … ulcers … and it is grievous, for one cannot escape it.
5 ¶ But if it is in a person who is **lean**, then it is to his harm …;
6 [yet] if you find his great sickness, and he is lean, with a sickness in his side, then one should bleed him,
7 for **he has too little blood** …;
8 but if the blood is **black** from bleeding, one should bleed him often, **for he has too much blood**.
9 ¶ Those who should rightly bleed:
10 and an old man who is cold by nature …;
11 but if he has a sickness, he gains by … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 53r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

seasonal bloodletting calendar (Almansor; avoid the dog-days; Sept.–Dec. calends); → rubric "On the cold stomach"

1 …der maist[er] **Almansor** [spricht], das man mit [s]ol laussen in gar haisser zit gar [s]elbe.

2 ¶ Du solt wissen, woer gefallen ist, [der] [s]ol [s]o zü hand laussen, das es blüt-recht sye, bi jm starcke;

3 jedoch erst[en] [ge]druncken.

4 [N]iemand sol[t] laussen [zur Unzeit] … ¶ Man sol wissen, an welhem tail der brest ist;

5 [ist es] [s]chwer, [s]ol man mit laussen in dem tail, der gnesen sol;

6 … und [wenn] er hize-blüt by jm behaltet … [s]o er geswinet [s]chaden …;

7 und omb [s]o [ist] laussen gut, das es zü recht tüt, [wenn] er [s]in bedürfft.

8 ¶ Hie stat von den hundischentag[en] … ¶ [Man soll] [s]ich hüten mit laussen [an] den hundischen tag[en],

9 [nach] dem vorgeschriben[en] kalender;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

10 … und [bleibe] an [dem] herbstmonet, der da haisset September …;

11 und [zu] der selb[en] zit [s]ol man laussen, in dem bad … ¶ Ze den kalende[n] des herbstmonets untz in die … und [vom] herbstmonet untz in die kalende[n] des herbstmonets December … woer du gut adern wölle laussen, [der wähle die Zeit] …, in die das behalter die gut blüt, und das böse [von dir] haut.

12 ¶ [red] Von den kalten magen, und von der …

TRANSLATION

1 … Master **Almansor** [says] one should bleed very rarely in great heat.

2 ¶ Know that whoever has fallen ill should bleed at once, while he is strong — yet only after he has eaten/drunk.

3 No one should bleed at the wrong time … ¶ Know in which part the ailment is;

4 if it is grievous, bleed in the part that is to heal;

5 … and if he retains hot blood … he takes harm …;

6 therefore bleeding is good, done rightly, when he needs it.

7 ¶ Here [follows] of the **dog-days** …:

8 guard against bleeding in the dog-days, per the calendar above;

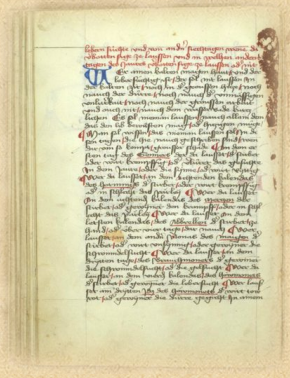
9 … and bleed in the autumn-month called **September** …;

10 and at that time bleed, in the bath … ¶ From the **calends of September** until … and from the autumn-month until the **calends of December** …;

11 whoever would rightly bleed a vein should choose the time that keeps the good blood and takes away the bad.

12 ¶ **On the cold stomach, and on the …** ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 53v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the "cold stomach"; a prognostic bloodletting calendar (perilous days → specific diseases)

1 …[der] leber-süchte;

2 und von minder prestagen, [wo] da [s]chad [s]ye ze laussen, und in welhen andern tagen … [s]chad [s]ye ze laussen.

3 ¶ [W] Wer amen kalten magen haut, und der leber-süchte ist, der sol mit laussen … in dem grossen hize,

4 noch nauch der [s]üre, noch nauch der [s]ummässen, [der] unlustkait, noch nauch dem wasser-süchte,

5 und ouch nit nauch dem wasser.

6 ¶ Es sol [s]o [niemand] laussen nauch allem, das den lib beswären mag.

7 ¶ Man sol wissen, das nieman laussen sölle in den tagen, die hie nauch geschriben sind,

8 [denn] woen der von [s]o kompt [s]chwer-[s]chade:

9 ¶ [Wer da laussst an einem Tag im **Hornung** = Februar], der woet beramffsig[?].

10 ¶ Wer da laussst an dem achtend kalende[n] des **Mertzen**, der gewinnet den krampff.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

11 ¶ Wer da laussst an dem letsten kalende[n] des **Abrellen**, der [s]übat[?] [s]e gan, oder über vier tag[e] dernauch.

12 ¶ Wer laussst an dem andern Monat des **Maigen**, der woet consummiret, oder gewinnet die [s]chwindelsucht.

13 ¶ Wer da laussst an dem dritten tag des **Brauchmonats**, der gewinnet die [s]chwindelsucht, als die gelsucht.

14 ¶ Wer da laussst an dem vierzehenden kalende[n] des **Höwmonats**, der gewinnet die leber-sucht.

15 ¶ Wer laussst am dritten tag des **Ougstmonats**, der woet tot, oder [s]ol gewinnet die … sucht in amen …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …the liver-sickness;

2 and of lesser ailments, [know] where it is harmful to bleed, and on which other days it is harmful to bleed.

3 ¶ Whoever has a **cold stomach** and the liver-sickness should **not** bleed in great heat, nor after acidity,

4 nor after a surfeit, nor after the dropsy, nor after [drinking] water.

5 ¶ No one should bleed contrary to anything that may burden the body.

6 ¶ Know that no one should bleed on the days written hereafter, for great harm comes of it:

7 ¶ Whoever bleeds [on a day in **February**] becomes [afflicted].

8 ¶ Whoever bleeds on the **8th calends of March** gets the **cramp**.

9 ¶ Whoever bleeds on the **last calends of April** [is harmed], or within four days after.

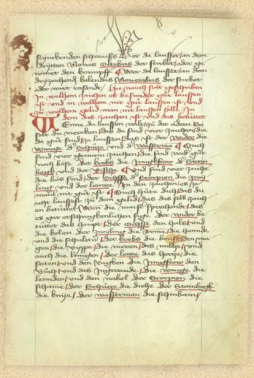
10 ¶ Whoever bleeds in the second [reckoning] of **May** is consumed, or gets the **vertigo-sickness**.

11 ¶ Whoever bleeds on the **3rd day of June** gets the vertigo-sickness, like jaundice.

12 ¶ Whoever bleeds on the **14th calends of July** gets the **liver-sickness**.

13 ¶ Whoever bleeds on the **3rd day of August** dies, or gets the [...] sickness … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 54r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

perilous days (concl.); the three groups of signs for bleeding; the full sign→body-part list (melothesia)

…[Wer da laussst] an den dritten Nonas **October**, der [s]übat[?], oder gewinnet den krampff.

¶ Wer da laussst an den drizehenden kalenden **Novembris**, der [s]übat[?], oder woet rasende.

¶ Hie nauch stat geschriben:

in welhem zaichen es besonder gut[s] laussen ist, und in welhem [nit] gut laussen ist,

und in welhem [s]o man laussen sol[t].

¶ **Von den zaichen, in welhem es gut und [in welchem] böse ist [zu laussen].** ¶ [W] Wenne du laussen wolt,

so solt du mercken:

die da [s]ind vier zaichen, die da gut[s] sind ze laussen:

das ist der Wider, die Wauge, die Zwilling, und der Wasserman. ¶ **Und** der vier genannt[en] zaichen,

die sind weder gut[s] noch böse:

der Krebs, die Junckfrow, der Stainbock, und die Visch̃e. ¶ **Und** die vier zaichen, die böse sind:

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

12 der Stier, der Scorpion, der Lewe, und der Schütze. ¶ Auch hüte dich, das du nit laussest zü dem gelid,

13 das das selb [zaichen] an-berürt.

14 Wan die maist[er] sprechend, das es gar [s]chad sye:

15 der Wider betütet das houpt;

16 der Stier den hals und die kelen;

17 der Zwilling die arme, die hende und die [s]chultern;

18 der Krebs die brust, die [s]eite und die rippe, die lungen, das milze und auch die [leber = Leber];

19 der Lewe das hertze, den rucken und die [s]eiten;

20 die Junckfrow den buch und das ynnerwand;

21 die Wauge die lenden und den nabel;

22 der Scorpion die [s]chame;

23 der Schütze die diche;

24 der Stainbock die knie;

25 der Wasserman die [s]chinbain [und die Vische die füsse].

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…[Whoever bleeds] on the third Nones of **October** is harmed, or gets the **cramp**.

¶ Whoever bleeds on the thirteenth calends of **November** is harmed, or becomes **raving mad**.

¶ Here follows:

in which sign it is especially good to bleed, in which it is not good, and in which one must [take care] to bleed.

¶ On the signs, in which it is good and in which bad to bleed. ¶ When you would bleed, mark this:

there are **four signs good for bleeding — Aries, Libra, Gemini, and Aquarius**.

¶ And **four signs that are neither good nor bad — Cancer, Virgo, Capricorn, and Pisces**.

¶ And **four signs that are bad — Taurus, Scorpio, Leo, and Sagittarius**.

¶ Also beware not to bleed at the limb that the [moon's] sign governs, for the masters say it is very harmful:

Aries → the head;

Taurus → the neck and throat;

Gemini → the arms, hands and shoulders;

Cancer → the chest, side and ribs, the lungs, the spleen and also the liver;

Leo → the heart, back and sides;

Virgo → the belly and entrails;

Libra → the loins and navel;

Scorpio → the genitals;

Sagittarius → the thighs;

Capricorn → the knees;

Aquarius → the shins [and Pisces → the feet].

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 54v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the ZODIAC-MAN (Homo signorum / melothesia diagram) + the rule of the moon's sign

1 … Du solt mercken, in welhem zaichen [der] mön loufft, und in welhem monet,

2 wann das mensche[n]lib ist ze tuilet, als recht da vor gesaut [ist].

3 ¶ Ist [es], das du an dem tuile recht lauffest, … grosse[r] schade, und wider grosse[r] langwerend[er] schade,

4 … der … tod.

5 ¶ Du solt warten, das du recht vinde[st] … in den selben taile.

TRANSLATION

1 … You should mark in which sign the moon runs, and in which month,

2 since the human body is "divided" among the signs, as said just before.

3 ¶ If you strike [bleed] the [wrong] part, [there comes] great and lasting harm, even death.

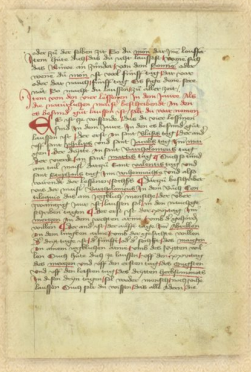
4 ¶ Take care to find the right [part] … in that same part.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

EDITORIAL NOTE

(The famous full-page figure; the accompanying text was also given in Part I/E.)

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 55r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

avoid bleeding at eclipse/dark moon; the four "golden" bleeding feast-days; Master Bartholomeus, De [Con]vivologio

…oder zü der selben zit, [s]o du[r] mön dar inne laufft.

¶ Item hüte dich, das du nit laussest, wann [s]ich das [Gestirn] in finster von dem Sonne [verdunkelt];

oder woene du[r] mön ist wol finster, [den] tag dar vor oder dernauch …;

doch [sonst] ist alle laussen-zit aller zit [gut].

¶ Item von den vier [Zeiten] in dem Jaure:

als die [vornehmsten] maist[er] beschribende, in den es besinder gut[s] laussen ist, [s]ol[t] du wol [benennen].

¶ [E] Es [ist] herwesende, das die [Tage] in dem Jaure, in den es besinder gut[s] zu laussen ist:

der erst[e] an sant **Blasius** tag …;

und sant **Jacobs** tag in dem Mai;

der ander in dem [Höwmonat = Juli];

und der dritte an sant **Bartholomeus** tag;

der vierd an sant **Marcis** tag …;

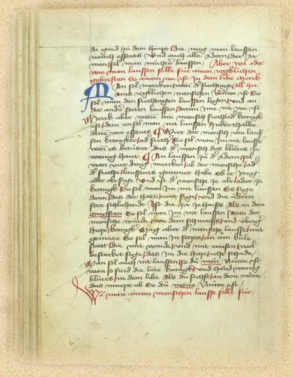
This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

darzü [s]o gehören willen sant **Steffans** tag, im wintermonet;
als wie die [Lektionen] geschriben [sind].
¶ Auch beschribet der maist[er] **Bartholomeus** in dem büch **De [Con]vivologio**[?], das am yeglich mensche,
der über zwainzig jaur alt ist, laussen [s]ol[t] [zu] den vier-geschribnen tagen.

TRANSLATION

…or at that same time when the moon runs in it [the governing sign].
¶ Item, beware that you do not bleed when the [heaven] is darkened in an eclipse of the sun,
or when the moon is wholly dark, the day before or after …;
otherwise every bleeding-time is good.
¶ Item, of the **four [seasons]** in the year that the chief masters describe as especially good for bleeding,
you should rightly name [them].
¶ Be it known that the days especially good to bleed are:
the first on **St Blaise's day** [3 Feb] …;
and **St Jacob's day** in May;
the second in [July];
and the third on **St Bartholomew's day** [24 Aug];
the fourth on **St Mark's day** …;
and to these belongs **St Stephen's day** in December — as the [lessons] are written.
¶ Master **Bartholomeus** also describes, in the book *De [Con]vivologio*,
that every person over twenty years old should bleed on the four prescribed days.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 55v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

bleed by the seat of the ailment; the "four things to note"; no bleeding at the new moon (the tidal analogy)

1 …[für ein Weh] zü dem houpt die mag man laussen nauch essens;

2 und ouch alle adern … mag man laussen.

3 Aber von wo man laussen sölle für amen yeglichen gebresten, [der] in dem libe [ist]:

4 ¶ [A] Man sol mercken, wo der gebrest an amer yeglichen menschen ist;

5 [da] sol man [für] den gebresten laussen …;

6 und an der ander siten laussen, wann [es] me mit wo ist.

7 ¶ Merck aber, wann am gebreste kompt:

8 [wenn] es den[n] anfangs ist, [s]o sol man mit laussen … [die Ader] die vor essens.

9 ¶ Wirt der mensch von der kranckheit [s]o [s]chwach, das er nit mag laussen;

10 wan es berürt das, das der mensch des blütes zü wenig haut.

11 ¶ Item laussen zü der adern sol man **vier ding merken**:

12 ob der mensch des blütes gewonet habe;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

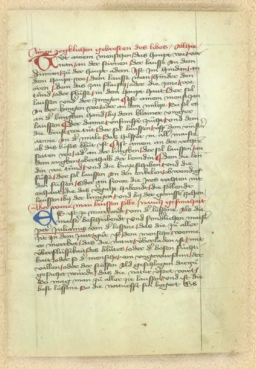
13 ob er müg;
14 ob er alt oder jung [ist];
15 und [seine Kraft];
16 und ist der mensch zü alt oder zü kranck, so sol man jm nit laussen.
17 … ist die zit [zu] gehaisse, als in dem [Augste = August], so sol man jm nit laussen,
18 wann der mensche woed [s]o geschwächt und über-hizig-kranck.
19 ¶ Man sol auch nit laussen, [s]o du[r] mön nüwe ist;
20 wan [s]o sind die lüte kranck-est und hond wenig blütes in dem libe;
21 **als du[r] sehst an dem mere, das nimpt ab, [s]o du[r] mön nüwe ist.** ¶ [red] **[W]ann man amen menschen laussen sölle, wie …**

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …for a pain in the head one may bleed after eating;
2 and one may bleed all the veins ….
3 But as to where one should bleed for any particular ailment in the body:
4 ¶ One should note where the ailment is in each person;
5 there one should bleed for it …;
6 and bleed on the other side when it is more on [one side].
7 ¶ But note:
8 when an ailment first comes, at its beginning, one should bleed [the vein that is] before eating.
9 ¶ If the person becomes so weak from illness that he cannot endure bleeding — for that touches the fact that he has too little blood.
10 ¶ Item, before bleeding a vein one should note **four things**:
11 whether the person is used to bleeding;
12 whether he can tolerate it;
13 whether he is old or young;
14 and his strength;
15 and if the person is too old or too sick, one should not bleed him.
16 … If the season is too hot, as in **August**, one should not bleed him,
17 for the person becomes too weakened and over-heated.
18 ¶ One should also not bleed at the **new moon**, for then people are weakest and have the least blood in the body — **as you see in the sea, which ebbs when the moon is new. ¶ When one should let a person blood, how … ¶**

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 56r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

which vein to bleed for which ailment; Master Julianus "On bloodletting" (the median vein safest)

1 …[für] amen yeglichen gebresten des libes:

2 ¶ [V] [V]or amen menschen, [dem] das houpt [s]ere, an amen der [s]chläfen[?]:

3 der lausse an dem dumen, zü der houpt-adern.

4 ¶ Ist jm [we] an dem houpt, so lausse man jm [s]under …;

5 und ist es [s]chwere gebresten in dem houpt, so lausse man jm zü der mittel[-adern].

6 ¶ Ist [we] amen menschen an der brust, so sol er an dem milze laussen, an der lingsten hand, by dem klainer vinger.

7 ¶ Der danne unsinnig … ist, der lausse die houpt[-adern];

8 … der sol laussen off der mittel[-adern], das hilffet in allermaussen.

9 ¶ … [Ist] das böse blüt amen in der rechten [s]eiten, der sol laussen an der lingsten;

10 der [vom] rucken [we hat] …;

11 und [für] die füsse, der sol laussen an den enkelen, [die s]braut-adern.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

12 ¶ … [eine] frow, die jres rechten engaut …, die [s]ollend laussen by der knien und by der grossen zehen!

13 ¶ Aber wenne man laussen sölle [für] mauch gesundthait:

14 ¶ [E] Es ist ze mercken, von dem laussen, als die maist[er] beschribende,

15 und [s]underlichen maist[er] **Julianus** von dem Lassen, das die [Adern] zü aller zit gesund sin … ze mercken,

16 [wenn] die nature [r]obeladen ist mit überflüssigem blütes, oder [mit] der bösen füchte …;

17 und [s]o die nature starck …, so mag man zü aller zit laussen;

18 **und ist die best[e] lässine [s]o die mittel-adern** [s]in.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…[for] any particular ailment of the body:

¶ For a person whose **head** hurts badly, at one of the temples:

let him bleed at the **thumb**, to the head-vein.

¶ If his head aches, let him bleed [under …];

and if it is a severe head-ailment, let him bleed at the **median vein**.

¶ If a person hurts at the **chest**, he should bleed at the **spleen-vein**, on the left hand,

by the little finger.

¶ One who is mad/frenzied should bleed the **head-vein**;

… he should bleed at the **median vein** — that helps in every way.

¶ If the bad blood is in someone's **right side**, he should bleed on the **left**;

one who hurts at the **back** …;

and for the **feet**, he should bleed at the **ankles** (the ankle/saphenous veins).

¶ A woman whose **monthly courses are withheld** should bleed at the **knees** and at the **great toe**.

¶ But as to when one should bleed for health:

¶ It is to be noted, of bloodletting — as the masters describe, and especially Master Julianus,

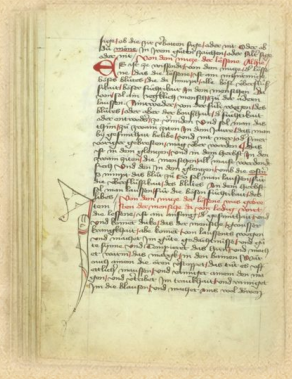
"On Bloodletting" — that some veins are safe to bleed at all times …;

note when nature is overloaded with excess blood or with bad humours …;

and when nature is strong, one may bleed at any time;

and the best vein is the median vein. ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 56v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the right conduct of bloodletting (measure the amount; liver-vein for excess); the benefits of bloodletting

…[merke], ob die zit rehtschaffen [s]ye oder mit;
oder ab dü mön in amen güten zaichen [s]ye oder böse.
¶ Von dem [r]echtschaffen[en] der lässine.
Allhie: ¶ [E] Es ist ze wissende von dem [r]echtschaffen[en] der lässine,
das die lässine ist am [s]onderwirckung … [die] böse, [r]oberflüssig blüt [vertreibt],
[das] [s]o frügelau[?] an dem menschen.
¶ Wan sol[t] [an] dem rechtlich menschen zü der adern laussen.
¶ Item [merke] die füll der adern …;
und sol man das ermissen güt[lich] an dem maul, das man by gesundthait belibe,
und mit mer — [s]o [aus] der unmässiger gebresten aber [Schaden] woerden mag.
¶ Das blüt ist [reich] in den [Frühling] und in den herbst von der grossen hitze;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

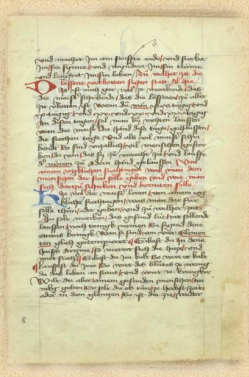
12 die menschen all woerdent …, [und] das blüt zü-kompt;
13 so sol man laussen [zu] der **[s]eber-[adern]** [für] die [s]beflüssikait des Blutes;
14 an dem houpt sol man laussen für die bösen [s]üchte des libes.
15 ¶ **Von dem nutze der lässine [an] dem libe:** ¶ [V] Von dem nutze der lässine [ist] ze wissende:
16 das die lässine, ob er am anfangs ist, … kompt dabe, das der mensche, [der] [s]chon kranck,
17 … [genest] von laussens-wegen;
18 und machet jm **güte gedächtnisse** und **güte [s]inne**;
19 und tempieret das blüt;
20 und machet jm güte;
21 und [s]o ouch amen die **ören** off-sperret;
22 … und [r]ainiget amen den **magen** und die **leber**;
23 … und [r]ainiget jm die **blausen**;
24 und machet ame wol.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…[note] whether the time is proper or not;
or whether the moon is in a good sign or a bad one.
¶ On the right conduct of bloodletting.
Here: ¶ Be it known, of the right conduct of bloodletting,
that bloodletting is a particular operation … [that] drives out the bad, excess blood in the person.
¶ One should bleed the right person at the vein.
¶ Item, note the fullness of the veins …;
and one should measure the amount well, so that one remains in health and not more — for from immoderate bloodletting harm may come.
¶ The blood is abundant in spring and in autumn from the great heat;
all people become full and the blood gathers;
so one should bleed the **liver-vein** for the excess of blood;
at the **head** one should bleed for the bad ailments of the body.
¶ **On the benefit of bloodletting for the body:** ¶ Of the benefit of bloodletting, be it known:
that bloodletting, if done at the onset [of illness], … brings it about that a person already sick recovers by bloodletting;
and it gives him **good memory and good senses**;
tempers the blood;
makes him well;
opens the ears;
… and cleanses the **stomach** and the **liver**;
… and cleanses the **bladder**;
and makes one feel well.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 57r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

further benefits; the right time for bleeding; tailoring medicine vs. bloodletting to the patient and season

1 …und machet jm am [s]enffte rede, und [s]tarcke [s]inne, und myndert … tröme, und lengt … [das] leben.

2 ¶ [Z]ü welher zit die lässine [r]echt-batter sye.

3 Allhie: ¶ [E] Es ist auch gar ze mercken, das die maist[er] beschribende,

4 das die lässine zü aller [zeit] zü laussen ist;

5 … In den [gewissen] tagen sol man by müzzen laussen;

6 wan die maist[er] hand die tage [s]o gehaissen … gut[s] [s]ind ze laussen.

7 ¶ [Vom] mönen [und] zü adern gelaussen:

8 vor amen [wiederkehrenden] siechtagen, was man dem menschen für die [Krankheit] söll[e] geben;

9 und wie man [s]ich darzü schicken und beraiten sölle.

10 ¶ Die maist[er] lesen, wan amen [bei] [r]echtlichen siechtagen man dem für die [Krankheit] sölle thün oder geben, und zü welher zit [s]ol[t] du es thün;

11 und zü welher zit gesund lüt[e] mer söllendt laussen.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

12 ¶ … Es-baist du jm dene hasse arznie, [s]o macher [s]ich die hize [mehr];

13 … gibst du jme [Kaltes], [s]o woet er kalt.

14 ¶ Gelaussst du jme, [s]o woet des blütes ze wenig, da die leber in staut, und woet er kranck.

15 ¶ Wilt du aber jm[en] gesund machen, maist[er]-lich, [s]o [s]ol[t] du es zü der herbst-zit [tun],

16 oder in den [Frühling], [s]o ist die zit [am besten] … ¶

TRANSLATION

1 …and it gives him gentle speech, strong senses, lessens [bad] dreams, and lengthens life.

2 ¶ At what time bloodletting is wholesome.

3 Here: ¶ Note too that the masters say bloodletting may be done at any time;

4 [but] on certain days one should bleed only moderately — for the masters have named those days,

5 [and say which] are good for bleeding.

6 ¶ The Moon and bloodletting:

7 before a recurring illness, what one should give the person for the disease, and how to prepare.

8 ¶ The masters tell what one should do or give for a serious illness, and at what time you should do it,

9 and at what time healthy people should bleed.

10 ¶ … If you give him hot medicine, the heat increases;

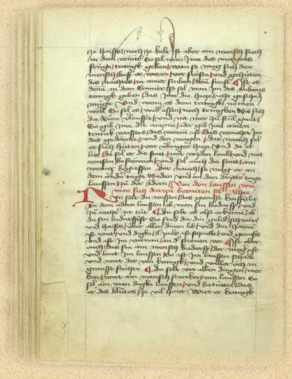
11 if you give cold, he grows cold;

12 if you bleed him, the blood becomes too little (where the liver stands), and he grows sick.

13 ¶ But if you would make him healthy, masterfully, you should do it in the **autumn season** or in **spring**,

14 when the time is best … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 57v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

tailoring food by season; preparing for bloodletting (bathe day 2, bleed day 3); "how one should prepare oneself"

…[wenn es weder] ze haisse noch ze kalt ist;
aber [bei] amen menschen, [der] starck in dem winter ist,
[s]o sol man jm … [s]enffte [s]piise [und] trancke geben, wann [s]o macht [s]ich der mensche, das er warm [s]e;
und [behüte] des magens in amer [s]tuben.
¶ Ist es dene in dem Sommer, so sol man jm, [gegen] die hize, gut [s]piise geben, das jme die hize [r]egt und gemüsse;
… ¶ … [Vor] der lässine:
gib jme die arzne, … amen trinck, wässerig …;
dar mauch sol er sich hüten mit [r]obriger hize;
… und sol auch die statt im warmen;
dar mauch mag es, an dem andern tage baden;
und an den dritten tage laussen zü der adern.
¶ Von dem laussen, wie man sich darzü beraiten sol[t].
Allhie: ¶ [M] Man sol wissen, das grosse krafft in dem [geübten] laussen [ist],

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

14 ob man jm bedürff und zü recht zü tüt.

15 ¶ Du sol[t] [erkennen], ob du es bedürffst:

16 [werden] die din[e] gelid[er] [heiß], und [s]e wirt [an] allen dinen lib … dick,

17 [s]e wirt es [s]ich [s]üchte und [s]chwere, und ist jm … der trumen we;

18 ist aber das sin am mensche [dessen] bedürff, der mag [s]ich;

19 und ist [das] laussen [dem Unrechten] [s]chade, und [macht] die kranke, und [s]chwellet in grosse [s]üchte.

20 ¶ Du sol[t] vor allen dingen [merken]:

21 … am mensche, [voll] von [Blut], sol dicke laussen, … [s]o er des blütes ze vil haut.

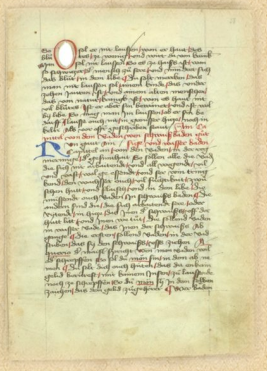
22 **Wirt er kranck** [von zu viel Blut] … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …[when it is] neither too hot nor too cold;
2 but for a person who is strong in winter, one should give him gentle warming food and drink,
3 so that the person becomes warm;
4 and keep the stomach warm in a heated room.
5 ¶ If it is in summer, one should give him, against the heat,
6 good [cooling] food that tempers the heat … ¶ Before the bloodletting:
7 give him the medicine, a watery drink …;
8 afterward he should beware of excess heat;
9 … and bathe the place in warm [water];
10 and he may, on the second day, bathe, and on the third day bleed at the vein.
11 ¶ On bloodletting, how one should prepare for it.
12 Here: ¶ Know that there is great benefit in practised bloodletting, if one needs it and does it rightly.
13 ¶ You should recognize whether you need it:
14 [if] your limbs grow hot, and the whole body thickens, sickness and ulcers arise, and bad dreams trouble [you];
15 but if a person needs it, he may do it;
16 whereas bleeding [the wrong person] does harm, makes the sick weaker, and swells them into great sickness.
17 ¶ Above all, note:
18 a person full of blood should bleed often, when he has too much blood.
19 **If he grows sick** [from too much blood] … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 58r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

cupping (Schröpfen; Pliny: when the moon wanes); sweat-baths and water-baths; rubric "On bathing"

…[s]o sol er mit laussen, wan er haut des blütes ze wenig und ist ze kranck.

¶ [W] Wem sol[t] man [nit] laussen?

[Wenn] es ze haisse ist;

wann [s]o gewinet der mensche [s]o vil vom füre, das das blüt in dem libe.

¶ Du sol[t] mercken, das man [nit] laussen sol[t] in amen [s]inden[?] zaichen …;

ist es aber bewärt [und er] wol by libe, so mag man jm laussen.

¶ Von dem [s]chwaiß-baden, wann [s]chwaiß-baden gut ist;

… und [vom] wasser-bade.

Capital von den baden. ¶ [R] [Aus] mengkly:

[s]o söllen alle die, die [s]ich mit arbaitend und all-woegende vil und vast wol ze essende und [s]ere vil trinckend …, [die] [s]o gen [s]chwitzend … und in dem libe, die müssende ouch baden in [s]chwaiß-baden.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

11 ¶ Die [s]ollend baden in wasser-bade, das es jnen der [s]chwaiß ab-zwinge.

12 ¶ Die [s]ollend baden in der [s]chwaiß-baden, das si den [s]chwaiß ziehen.

13 ¶ Es spricht der maist[er] **Plinius**:

14 wan man recht [s]chröpffen söll, [s]o sol man es [tun], [s]o du[r] mön [s]in in dem ab-nemen.

15 ¶ Du [s]olt dich ouch güten, das du an-[kain] gelid barierst mit isenen zu [s]chröpffen,

16 [s]o du[r] mön [s]y in dem selben zaichen, das den[n] gelid zü-gehört.

17 ¶ **Von dem baden.** ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …then he should bleed, for he has too little blood and is too sick.

2 ¶ Whom should one **not** bleed?

3 When it is too hot, for then the person gets so much from the heat that the blood [overheats] in the body.

4 ¶ Note that one should not bleed in a [certain] sign …;

5 but if it is proven and he is strong in body, one may bleed him.

6 ¶ On the sweat-bath:

7 when a sweat-bath is good;

8 and on the water-bath.

9 A chapter on bathing. ¶ For various reasons:

10 all those who work hard and always eat and drink much and well … so that they sweat … must also bathe, in sweat-baths.

11 ¶ They should bathe in a **water-bath**, to force the sweat out of them.

12 ¶ They should bathe in **sweat-baths**, to draw out the sweat.

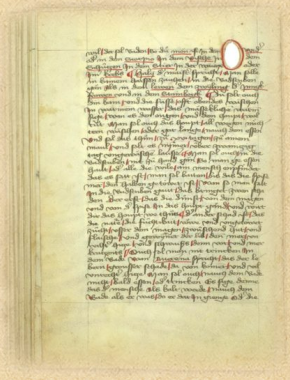
13 ¶ Master **Pliny** says:

14 when one should rightly **cup**, one should do it when the **moon is waning**.

15 ¶ You should also beware of touching any limb with iron for cupping while the moon is in the very sign that governs that limb.

16 ¶ **On bathing.** ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 58v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the bathing regimen: cleanses the stomach & draws out heat/sweat; don't drink in the bath (Avicenna)

1 …[das bad] der erst, das die [Dünste] von dem [magen = Magen] und … d[er] [s]piise in das houpt gänt …;
2 und [vertreibt] die [böse] mate …;
3 und [r]ainiget gut[s] den magen;
4 und gewirmet gut[e] lid;
5 [zieht] dem maugen … die hize und [s]chwaisses.
6 ¶ Auch sol man nit trincken in dem bade;
7 wan **Avicenna** sprichet, das [es] der leber böse [pro]ffit [s]chade;
8 … und sol [meiden] hize.
9 ¶ Man sol ouch nauch dem bade messig [und] bald essen;
10 und [s]o trincken …, das d[er] mensche [nicht] als bald [schwach] woere nauch dem bade, als er was,
11 [s]o er saß in dem [s]chwaiß … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …the bath first sends the [vapours] from the stomach and the food up into the head …;

2 and drives off the bad matter …;

3 and well cleanses the stomach;

4 and gives good limbs;

5 and draws the heat and sweat from the stomach.

6 ¶ Also one should **not drink in the bath**, for **Avicenna** says it harms the liver;

7 … and one should avoid [excess] heat.

8 ¶ One should also, after the bath, eat moderately and soon, and drink so …,

9 lest the person grow weak right after the bath, as he was when he sat in the sweat … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 59r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

bath scene; bathing temperature (neither too hot nor too cold); don't take cold after (Hippocrates)

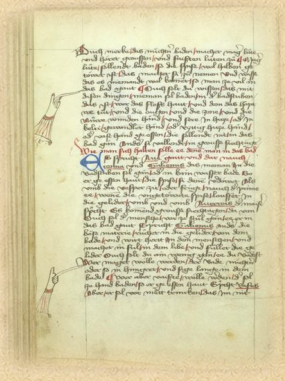
1 …[das bad zieht] … aber die [s]ucht in [s]chwaiß …;
2 [sonst] woere [es] sin [s]piit, und woet böser [s]chad.
3 ¶ Man sol nit zü haisse baden, noch zü kalt baden;
4 wan ze kalt baden [chillt] sere die lider in dem libe, und beliebt der [s]chwaiß [verschlossen] in dem [s]chwaiß;
5 … man sol ouch mässige hize haben … ¶ Man sol [s]ich ouch nit laussen erkalten nauch dem bade;
6 wan kalt nauch dem bade [wird], [s]o [s]chadet [es] dem houpte, den gliedern, dem magen, den nieren,
7 als **Ypocras** der maist[er] sprichet;
8 und machet ouch den krampff und den re-itern.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …[the bath draws out the sweat] …;
2 otherwise great harm comes.
3 ¶ One should bathe **neither too hot nor too cold**;
4 for too cold a bath sorely chills the limbs in the body, and the sweat stays shut in;
5 one should keep a **moderate heat** … ¶ One should also not let oneself **grow cold after the bath**;
6 for whoever grows cold after the bath, it harms the **head, the limbs, the stomach and the kidneys**,
7 as Master **Hippocrates** says;
8 and it also causes **cramp** and **fever**.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 59v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

bathing regimen (concl.): when to bathe; its benefits; do NOT bathe on a full stomach (Avicenna, Galen)

Auch machet das müssig baden mager lüte … ¶ [Die] mager lüte [s]ollend baden, [s]o die spise wol getövet ist;

… und [s]o es niemand [s]chad, man [ge]sol in das bad gaut.

¶ Ouch sol[t] du wissen, [für welche] dingen man baden:

wann baden [s]o ist [es] war, das [es] [reinigt] [das] haut, und den [s]chwaiß tüt,

und [hilft] die augen und die zene und die [s]inne …;

und [s]ere in hize;

und behende machet [die] hend;

… [wer] vast hend ge-essen [hat], die [s]öllend mit in das bad gän;

… [sonst] grausse [s]iechtage.

¶ Wie man sich halten sölle, e man in das bad gaut, und dar nauch. ¶ [E] Etwas [Geheimes]:

das man, [ehe] man in das bad gaut, … mit kain[em] wasser bade, [s]o er ze essen die spise [s]ye …;

es woere [confortabel] zü lauffen in die gelider, omb und omb.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

13 ¶ **Avicenna** der maist[er] sprichet:
14 es komendt grausse prestagen da von, [wenn] der mensche vor ze füll gefüllet in das bad gaut.
15 ¶ Es spricht **Galienus**:
16 [da] [s]chicket [die] böse matere in die gelider von dem bade, und woet hertt in dem menschen,
17 und machet in full in dem libe, und [s]chilfer die gelider.
18 ¶ Auch sol[t] du am wenig ynne sin in dem bade …;
19 [und] mit ze haut baden, [wenn] er gessen haut.
20 ¶ Es spricht der maist[er]:
21 aber [s]o er [s]att trincken [will], das jm … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

[1] Leisurely bathing also makes people lean … ¶ Lean people should bathe once the food is well digested;

[2] … and when it harms no one, one may go to the bath.

[3] ¶ Know also for what things one should bathe:

[4] for bathing truly cleanses the hair, drives out the sweat, and benefits the eyes, the teeth and the senses …;

[5] warms in heat;

[6] and makes the hands nimble;

[7] … whoever has eaten heavily should **not** go into the bath, lest great sicknesses come of it.

[8] ¶ **How one should conduct oneself before and after going to the bath.** ¶ A secret:

[9] that before going into the bath one should bathe in no water when the food is [yet to be eaten] …;

[10] [so] that it be comfortable for [the blood] to run into the limbs, all around.

[11] ¶ **Avicenna** the master says:

[12] great ailments come of it if a person goes to the bath too full.

[13] ¶ **Galen** says:

[14] the bad matter is sent into the limbs by the bath, and grows hard in the person, and fills the body,

[15] and weakens the limbs.

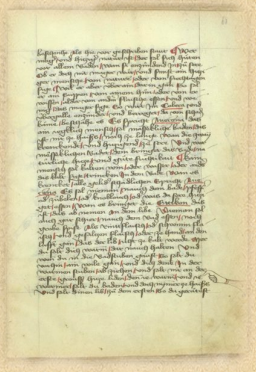
[16] ¶ Also you should stay only a little while in the bath …;

[17] and do not bathe right after eating.

[18] ¶ The master says:

[19] but if he would drink his fill, that [harms] him … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 60r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

bathing by complexion (Avicenna: moderate baths); what not to eat or do after bathing; keep warm

1 …[s]chadende, als hie vor geschriben staut.

2 ¶ Wan [s]o nüw und hizig mature ist, der sol sich hüten vor allem baden, wann si entzündend.

3 ¶ Ob am tag mit mässe baden am hizig mensche [s]chade;

4 aber [r]obrig baden [s]chade jme.

5 … [Man soll eine] suppen [essen] … und [s]üsse kost.

6 ¶ … es spricht **Avicenna**, das am reglich mensche sol mässige baden haben — das ist [weder] ze haisse noch ze kalt — wan die grossen flammen und hize [s]chent …;

7 und mässige baden [s]ind gut];

8 [zu] grosse hize schade[t] dem libe … ¶ Item kein mensch sol baden,

9 [s]o er … in dem bade [ist] … ¶ Es sol nieman nauch dem bade [s]chlauffen … [oder] knöblaug essen,

10 wann es bringet die … ¶ Nieman sol auch gar [s]ere nauch dem bad essen … als nüw flaisch, [s]chwamm,

11 [s]chwin[-fleisch] …;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

12 aber dicke gän [zu Stuhl].

13 ¶ … man, du sol[t] dich woarm halten nauch dem baden, und … nit zü kalt gän;

14 und dich [halte] an der woarmen [s]tuben … als die [s]chwaiss hin gänt, … [bleibe] woarm.

TRANSLATION

1 …harmful, as written above.

2 ¶ Whoever is of a young and hot nature should beware of too much bathing, for it inflames.

3 ¶ Though a day's moderate bathing harms a hot person, excessive bathing harms him [more].

4 … [One should] take a soup … and sweet fare.

5 ¶ … **Avicenna** says a sensible person should keep **moderate baths** — neither too hot nor too cold — for great flames and heat do harm …;

6 moderate baths are good, [whereas] excessive heat harms the body.

7 ¶ Item, no one should bathe when [unwell] in the bath.

8 ¶ No one should sleep right after the bath, or eat garlic, for it brings [harm].

9 ¶ Nor should anyone eat heavily right after the bath — no fresh meat, mushrooms,

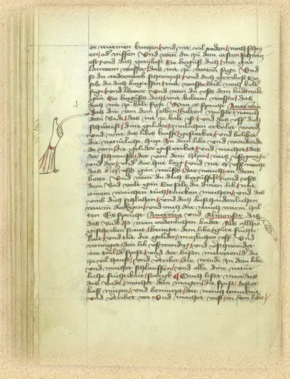
10 or pork — but rather go often [to stool].

11 ¶ … you should **keep warm after bathing**, and not go out into the cold;

12 stay in the warm room;

13 … and as the sweat goes off, keep warm.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 60v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

dousing after the sweat; the benefits of bathing (Avicenna, Almansor) — end of the bathing chapter

1 …[halte dich] woarm …;

2 und wan du in dem ersten [s]chwitzen bist …, [s]o begüsse dich mit gar [tepidem] wasser, das mit gewoarmem [s]ye.

3 Und [s]o du im andern [s]chwitzen bist …, [s]o sol[t] du dich begiessen mit wasser noch kalt ist;

4 und [s]o du … dem bad-woelt [verlassen] willen, [s]o begüsse dich mit [lauem] wasser, das nit ze haisse sye.

5 ¶ Wan es spricht **Avicenna**, das die [Begießung] mit dem [s]elben baden-wasser, [s]o … [es] ze kalt ist,

6 … [stärkt] des libes kraft;

7 und [temperiert] die maturliche hize in dem libe;

8 und woet [s]e der mensche gesund …;

9 dar mauch [gehe] in dem bette … ¶ …[wenn] du [aus] dem bad woelt gän,

10 [s]o sol[t] du dinen lib mit amen woarmen tüchstücken [bedecken], und das omb dich gehaben;

11 … und ouch der nauch warm halten.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

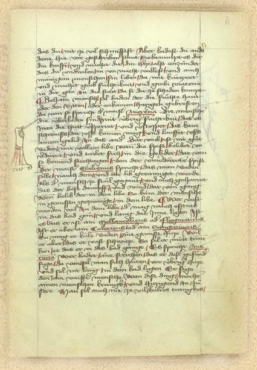
12 ¶ Es spricht **Avicenna** und **Almansor**:
13 das, als hie geschriben staut, [die Bäder] dem libe güte …;
14 und die gelider [bewegen];
15 und [temperieren] die maturliche hize in dem libe;
16 und woet der mensch [stark am] hertz und [an] die [s]eite;
17 und [treiben] den böse[n] mature, der ze-gauhauffet ist in dem libe, … und alle innerliche [s]chwerheit [s]chwecket.
18 ¶ Auch lest man, das [es] machet den magen die spise bass mügen;
19 und bewegt der manch kranckheit;
20 und tribet we;
21 und machet roest in dem libe.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…keep warm …;
and when you are in the **first sweat**, douse yourself with tepid, slightly warmed water.
And when you are in the **second sweat**, douse yourself with cooler water;
and when you would leave the bath, douse yourself with lukewarm water, not too hot.
¶ For **Avicenna** says that dousing with the bath-water when it is somewhat cold strengthens the body's vigour and tempers the natural heat in the body, so the person becomes healthy …;
afterward go to bed … ¶ …when you would leave the bath, wrap your body with warm cloths and keep them about you;
… and keep warm afterward.
¶ **Avicenna and Almansor** say:
that, as written here, the baths do the body good …;
move the limbs;
temper the natural heat in the body;
strengthen the heart and the side;
drive out the bad matter accumulated in the body;
and weaken all inner heaviness.
¶ It is also taught that it makes the stomach better able to digest food;
relieves many a sickness;
drives out pain;
and gives the body rest. ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 61r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

bathing by complexion; sweating out the "bad vapour" (Galen, Constantine); avoid excess heat & overeating (Avicenna)

1 …das du[r] [nit] ze vil [bade];

2 aber bade[s]t du [zu rechter Zeit], [s]o du es ze hand [tust], [s]o [hilft] es die in dem libe …;

3 und [grobe] matere [geht] an die statt, da si … kompt.

4 ¶ Dehain mensch sol baden, der die [s]chwitze [nicht] haut … ¶ **Avicenna**:

5 die menschen die … sind, mit [r]oberge [Feuchte], [denen] ist gut schwitzen;

6 … und [esse] gut spis, [aber] nit mit vollen libe, wan die spise beliebt und [wird] [s]chwarz und [geht] in die galle, dar von kompt [s]üchtigem … ¶ Der maist[er] **[Galienus]** spricht:

7 das man baden [s]ol[t] allen menschen, der die böse complexion gewinet — als der böse dampff und win[d],

8 der [aus] menschen [s]chwitzet;

9 … das der böse dampff und win[d] [nicht] belib in dem libe.

10 ¶ Wer baden will, an dem libe, [s]o mag sich [s]chwitzen …;

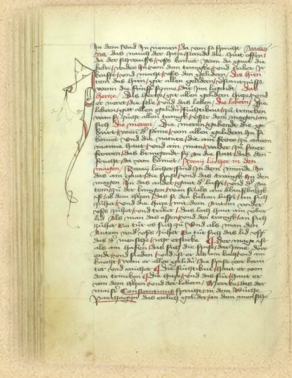
This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

und ist es vast am **Mellancolicus**, [so bade er] als **Constantinus**;
aber [s]o [er ein] kolericus ist, [s]o mag er bald baden [und] sine [s]chwitze wol [ausschwitzen] … ¶ Es spricht **Avicenna**:
das man [s]ol[t] hütten vor überge hize;
und [s]ol[t] nit lang liegen in dem bade;
wann diise dinge machet den mensgen kranck … ¶ Man sol auch nit gar [s]o vil essen, rastes-los … ¶

TRANSLATION

…that you bathe not too much;
but if you bathe at the right time, doing it at once, it helps those in the body …;
and grosser matter goes to the place where [it does harm].
¶ No person should bathe who [cannot] sweat … ¶ **Avicenna**:
people who are [over-moist] do well to sweat;
… and eat good food, but not on a full body, for the food stays, turns black, and goes into the bile,
whence comes sickness.
¶ Master **Galen** says:
one should bathe all people who develop a bad complexion — like the **bad vapour and wind** that people sweat out;
so that the bad vapour and wind does **not** remain in the body.
¶ Whoever would bathe his body may sweat much …;
and if he is very much a **Melancholic**, let him bathe as **Constantine** [advises];
but a **choleric** may bathe quickly and sweat his fill … ¶ **Avicenna** says:
beware of excessive heat, and do not lie long in the bath,
for these things make a person sick … ¶ One should also not eat too much, restlessly … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 61v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the natural heat and the "vital spirit"; the heart, liver and digestion; sweating (Avicenna, Constantine)

1 …[in dem bad:] da von [s]o spricht **Avicenna**:
2 das nauch der hize [s]taut die hut offen, da der [s]chwaiß [r]os kommet;
3 wan da gaut die kelti wider hin, von dem [trumpfe?], und [r]aibet [s]ne-krafft[?];
4 und macht [s]tarke den gelidern.
5 ¶ … wann die [s]ynne, die jm liegend:
6 das **hertze**;
7 das git allen gelidern hize, und meret die [s]ele und das leben;
8 die leben[s-kraft] git allen gelidern.
9 ¶ Fücztikait zü trincken:
10 wan [s]i zücht … ¶ Und die nature, die am frow zü amen manne haut, und am man wider zü [s]iner frowen,
11 das bringendt [s]y an die statt, das den frucht da von kommet.
12 ¶ **Zwai löcher** [sind] in den magen;
13 zwai löcher [s]ind in den münde:

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

14 in das am haut [er] die [s]pise und das [t]rancke in den magen;
15 jn das ander haut der [s]uffel[?] und der [m]untem[?] zü der lungen, wann [es ist] am blau-balgk, [i]st ob den hizen:
16 das si den kalten lufft an sich züchet, und die hize mit dem [a]utem wider [r]os züchet und tribet.
17 Das loch haut am [r]ober[?] lid:
18 als man das essen und den trangk an sich züchet, [s]o tüt es sich zü;
19 und als man den [a]utem und [r]os züchet, [s]o tüt sich das lid uff, das d[er] mensche nicht ersticke.
20 ¶ Der mage ist als am hafen, das sich die spise dar jnne dörr-ende und [s]ieden;
21 und ist er als am koch und am knäht, wann er allen gelidern die spise vor-beraitet und [r]auchet[?].
22 ¶ Die fücztikait haut er von dem trincken.
23 ¶ Die hize und das für haut er von dem [g]for[?] und [s]ir leben.
24 ¶ Marcke, das der maist[er] **Constantinus** [sprichet] … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

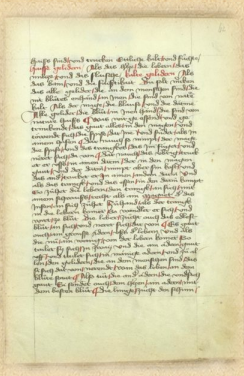
TRANSLATION

[In the bath:] therefore **Avicenna** says:
after the heat the skin stands open, so that the sweat **comes out**;
for the cold passes back out [through the pores], and [restores] strength, and makes the limbs strong.
¶ … the senses that lie within [depend on] the **heart**:
it gives all the limbs heat, and increases the soul and the life;
the life[-force] it gives to all the limbs.
¶ Moisture to drink:
for it draws … ¶ And the [generative] nature that a woman has toward a man, and a man toward his wife,
brings [it] to the place from which the offspring comes.
¶ **Two openings** are in the stomach;
two openings are in the mouth:
into the one [the body] takes food and drink down into the stomach;
into the other goes [the breath] to the lung — which is **like a bellows** set over the [vital] heat:
it draws cold air to itself, and with the breath draws the heat back out and drives it [forth].
That opening has a **lid [the epiglottis]**:
when one swallows food and drink, it closes;
and when one draws breath, the lid opens, so that the person does not choke.
¶ The stomach is like a **pot** in which the food is parched and boiled;
and it is like a **cook and a servant**, for it prepares the food for all the limbs.
¶ Its moisture it has from drinking.
¶ Its heat and fire it has from [?] and its life.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

22 ¶ Note that Master **Constantine** says … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 62r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

digestion and the humours: the stomach cooks "as in a pot"; the liver draws the chyle "as a magnet draws iron" and makes blood

1 …[etliche gelider] haisse sind und trucken;

2 etliche kalt und füchte;

3 etliche kalt …;

4 als … die leber, … die milze … ¶ Du sol[t] mercken, das [von] aller gelidern, die in dem menschen sind,

5 die mit blütes entspring[en] … die [s]ind [von] nature haisse;

6 etliche kalt, als der mage, die blause und die dürme.

7 ¶ Alle gelidern, die blüt in [sich] hand, die sind von nature haisse.

8 ¶ Was [man] ze essende und ge-trinckende [hat], das gaut alles in den magen …;

9 und [s]o die [s]piise dar jne kompt, dar inne [findet sie sich] als in amen **hafen**:

10 die [s]piise, [vermischt] mit dem trancke …;

11 und das [r]obrig krenkt[?] … in amen dürm, der [von] dem magen …;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

12 und als die trancke und das essen in den dürm kompt, [s]o zühet die **leber** den trancke[n] [s]ich zü mit amen grausse [Begehren];

13 **als am magnet das isen zühet**;

14 und [s]o [s]ich [s]o zühet, [s]o woandlet er die [s]piise und [macht] **blüt**.

15 ¶ Die leber zühet ouch das **gelb-blüt** zü sich …;

16 das gelb-blüt geht ouch in die galle …;

17 [und] die [s]piise zühet, und [geht] in die adern;

18 und [s]o tailer si [s]ich in mannige adern, und zü al[len] den gelidern, die an dem menschen sind,

19 das [s]ie [s]ich [s]o nähren — wan das blüt an der leber **entspringt**;

20 und die leber [speist] … sin[e] aderen mit dem **besten blüt**.

21 ¶ Die lungen zühet den [s]chim[?] …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …[some organs] are hot and dry, some cold and moist, some cold …;

2 as the liver, the spleen … ¶ Note that, of all the limbs in a person, those that spring with blood are by nature hot;

3 some are cold — like the stomach, the bladder and the intestines.

4 ¶ All limbs that have blood in them are by nature hot.

5 ¶ Whatever one eats and drinks all goes into the **stomach** …;

6 and when the food comes in, it is found there **as in a pot**:

7 the food, mixed with the drink …;

8 and the surplus [waste] passes into an intestine that leads from the stomach …;

9 and when the drink and food reach the intestine, the **liver draws the chyle to itself with a great eagerness — as a magnet draws iron** — and as it draws, it transforms the food and **makes blood**.

10 ¶ The liver also draws the **yellow bile** to itself …;

11 the bile goes into the gall-bladder …;

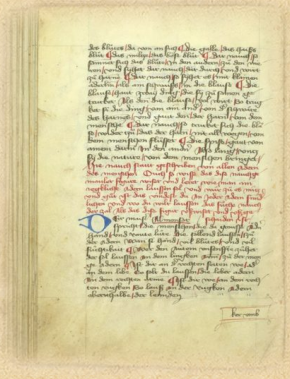
12 and the [nourishment] is drawn into the **veins**, which divide into many veins to all the limbs of the person,

13 so that they are nourished — for **the blood springs from the liver**,

14 and the liver feeds its veins with **the best blood**.

15 ¶ The lungs draw the [breath/spirit] …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 62v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

blood → urine → bladder; the spleen's "bad blood"; back to bloodletting indications (Almansor; bleed the affected side)

1 …[von] des blütes;
2 da von entspringt die galle …;
3 und das milge, [die] das böse blüt [macht].
4 ¶ Dar nauch [s]o [s]inget sich das blüt in den andern zü den adern;
5 und [s]iget das durch;
6 und woet zü **harne**.
7 ¶ Dar nauch [s]o [s]iget es mit klainen adern, als am [s]chwaiß, in die **blause**.
8 ¶ Die blause haut zwo dünn[e] [Gänge], die si zü amen [vereinen] …;
9 und gaut den[n] der harn [aus] von dem menschen.
10 ¶ … Die [s]piise gaut von amen dürm in den andern …;
11 als mauch staut geschriben von allen [a]dern des menschen.
12 ¶ Dar durch [s]o woisse, … wie man am yeglichen adern laussen sol, und war es müg, und güt ist.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

13 ¶ Das vindest du, [dass] an jeder adern sind [Zeichen];
14 und wo du wolt laussen, die süche … [die] [s]o gut ist.
15 ¶ [D] Der maist[er] **Almonsor** sprichet:
16 die menschen, die da grosse sind, … und reute lüte, die söllend laussen zü der adern,
17 wann si hand vil blütes und vil flüschait.
18 ¶ [W]er [von] der guten confessisse gleich [ist], der sol laussen an dem lingsten arm …;
19 ist die woe an [der rechten] siten, in dem libe, [s]o solt du laussen die **leber-adern an dem rechten arme**.
20 ¶ Ist die woe an dem rechten siten, so laussen an der lingsten … [für die] gelidern so lauss an der nügsten adern;
21 aber an dem halben der lenden … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…from the blood springs the gall …;
and the **spleen**, which makes the "bad blood." ¶ Thereafter the blood sinks through the veins, seeps through,
and becomes **urine**.
¶ Then it seeps through small veins, like sweat, into the **bladder**.
¶ The bladder has two thin ducts that join into one …;
and the urine then passes out of the person.
¶ … The food passes from one **intestine** to the next …;
as is written of all the veins of the person.
¶ Therefore know how one should bleed each vein, and to what end it may serve.
¶ You find that each vein has its [signs];
and where you would bleed, seek the one that is good.
¶ Master **Almansor** says:
people who are big and ruddy/full-blooded should bleed at the vein, for they have much blood and much fleshiness.
¶ Whoever is of a good, balanced complexion should bleed at the **left arm** …;
if the pain is in the right side of the body, you should bleed the **liver-vein at the right arm**.
¶ If the pain is on the right side, bleed at the left …;
for the limbs, bleed at the nearest vein;
but for the loins … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 63r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

full-page "Vein-Man" / bloodletting figure (Aderlassmann)

Illustration: a full-page standing **nude male figure** (frontal, arms outstretched) with the **bloodletting points marked on the body** (notably a row of marks across the chest/ribs). This is the phlebotomy counterpart to the Zodiac-Man (f. 54v): where the Zodiac-Man maps the signs to the body, the Vein-Man maps the **veins/points to be opened** for each region.

Text: the small **vein-labels** beside the bleeding points are heavily faded on this leaf and are largely illegible in the available scan; they would name the individual veins (head, temple, cephalic/median/liver/spleen veins at the arms, etc.) consistent with the lists transcribed on f. 51v, f. 54r and f. 56r above.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

12 *(Best checked against the BiblioPhilly deep-zoom facsimile — see Appendix 1.)*

TRANSLATION

1 This is the full-page Vein-Man (Aderlassmann):

2 a standing figure with the bloodletting points marked on the body, the phlebotomic counterpart to the Zodiac-Man of f.

3 54v.

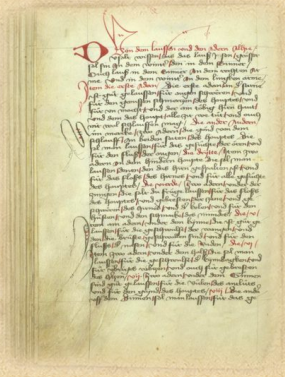
4 The small vein-labels beside the points are too faded in the surviving scan to be read with confidence.

5 The veins they name -- and the ailment for which each is opened -- are given in full, and legibly,

6 in the numbered vein-table on the facing leaves f.

7 63v–64r.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 63v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

"On bloodletting and the veins": the numbered vein-table (which vein for which ailment)

1 [red] Von dem laussen und den adern.

2 Allhie: ¶ [D] Du solt wissen, das laussen [mehr] in dem winter [ist] den[n] in dem [Sommer]:

3 [im Sommer] laussen an dem rechten und in dem winter an dem lingsten arme.

4 ¶ [I] Item **die erste adern** ist gut gelaussen für augen-geschwören;

5 und für den grossen schmerzen des houptes;

6 und für die [äußere] hirn-haut;

7 und [für] das houpt, [wenn es] alle[r] we tüt.

8 ¶ **Die ander[e] adern**, [s]o adern die sind … an baiden siten des houptes,

9 die man laussen die geschwere der oren und für den fluss der ougen.

10 ¶ **Die dritte**, [s]o von zwo adern an dem houpte, die sol man laussen für das spannen das gespalten ist;

11 und für das [v]lass des hirnes;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

und für alle geschwere des houptes.

¶ **Die [v]ierde**, [die] zwo adern under den ougen:
da [s]ol[t] du [s]ie laussen für das [Übel] des houptes;
und [die] gebresten der …;
und geschwere … des hirnes;
und [die Übel] des mundes.

¶ **Die [vi = 6.]**, [s]o von amen adern under den [Augen?], die ist gut gelaussen für die geschwere der wangen;
und die brüste, [s]o geschwollen sind;
und für den fluss;
und für die [s]enden.

¶ **Die [vii = 7.]**, [s]o von zwo adern under dem halse, die sol man laussen für die geschwollen der [Z]imbaggen;
und für [s]chruss;
und ouch für gebresten der lungen.

¶ **Die [viii = 8.]**, [s]o von zwo adern under den dümen, [die] sind gut gelaussen für die [v]ölen des anlüts;
und für den gebresten des houptes.

¶ **Die [viiii = 9.]** … [s]ol man laussen für das ge-…

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

On bloodletting and the veins.

Here: ¶ Know that bloodletting is [done more] in winter than in summer:

[in summer] bleed at the **right** arm, and in winter at the **left**.

¶ The **1st vein** is good to bleed for **eye-ulcers**, for **severe headache**,

for the [outer] **brain-membrane**, and for all that pains the head.

¶ The **2nd vein** — the veins on **both sides of the head [the temple veins]** — is bled for **ulcers of the ears** and the **flux of the eyes**.

¶ The **3rd** — two veins on the head — is bled for the **half-sided cramping [migraine]**,

for the [affliction] of the brain, and for all head-ulcers.

¶ The **4th** — two veins under the eyes — is bled for the **head's** affliction, ailments of the [...],

ulcers of the **brain**, and the ailments of the **mouth**.

¶ The **6th** — a vein under the [eye] — is good to bleed for **ulcers of the cheeks**,

the **breasts** when swollen, the flux, and the **loins**.

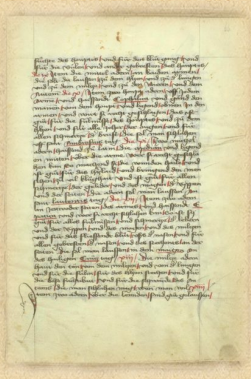
¶ The **7th** — two veins under the **neck** — is bled for swelling of the **jaw**, for [...],

and for ailments of the **lungs**.

¶ The **8th** — two veins under the **thumbs** — is good to bleed for the **face's** ills and ailments of the **head**.

¶ The **9th** … is bled for the … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 64r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

vein-table (cont.): median vein, cephalica, breast-vein, liver- and spleen-veins

…[ge]bresten des houptes;
und für den **blütgang**;
und für die [s]ülen;
und alle gebresten des houptes.
¶ Die [x = 10.], [s]o von der **mittel-adern**, die sol man laussen für den grossen;
und für die **[s]lungen**;
und zü den **milze**.
¶ Item das houpt-adern off den armen … und gut[s] für das houpt, und besunder kome in der armen;
und woet si [an]geschlagen, [so] gut[s] für die [s]ülen des houptes,
und für alle gebresten … und [für die] ougen, und für allen [s]chmerzen der gelidern des houptes.
¶ Die **brust-adern** [13.] sol man schlagen off [s]ant **Ambrosius** tag.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

12 ¶ [Item] die adern, die [s]ind in dem armen und liegend über die arme:

13 woer [s]ie geschlagen [hat] … [hilft] under den [Hals];

14 … [zieht] vil **blütgang**, und ist gut[s] für allen [s]chmerzen der gelidern, [für] das **hertz** …;

15 die adern sol man laussen um [s]ant Laurencius-tag.

16 ¶ Item zwo adern in [s]edere siten des armes:

17 die sind gut[s] gelaussen für allen [s]chmerzen und [die] [s]chwarze, [für] der **leber**, der **rippen**,

18 den **magen** und des **milze**;

19 und für das pflassende blüt … und für allen gebresten …;

20 die adern sol man laussen in den magen.

21 ¶ [xiii = 13.] Die **milze-adern** haut den [s]inen [s]on under den [r]omgelidern[?];

22 … und für die [s]ülen … [den] magen;

23 und für die [s]chwerheit [und] geschwüre …;

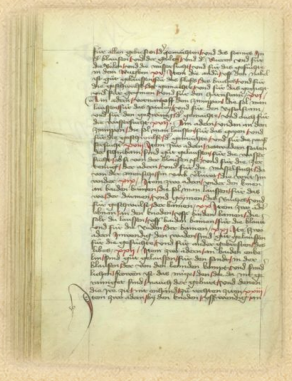
24 wan zwo adern, [die] über die lenden sind, [s]ind gut[s] gelaussen …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…ailments of the head;
and for the **blood-flux**;
and for the loins;
and all head-ailments.
¶ The **10th — the median vein** — is bled for severe [pain], for the **lungs**, and for the **spleen**.
¶ Item, the **head-vein (cephalica)** on the arms is good for the head, and especially what gathers in the arms;
and when opened, good for the head's ills, all ailments, the **eyes**, and all pain of the limbs of the head.
¶ The **breast-vein** is bled on **St Ambrose's day**.
¶ The veins that lie in and over the arms are good — whoever opens them [relieves] under the [throat] …;
it draws much **blood-flux**, and is good for all limb-pain and the **heart**;
this vein is bled around **St Laurence's day**.
¶ Item, two veins on each side of the arm are good to bleed for all pain and the **black bile**,
for the **liver, the ribs, the stomach and the spleen**, and for flowing blood and all ailments;
this vein is bled at the stomach.
¶ The **13th — the spleen-vein** — has its seat under the [lower limbs];
for the **loins** and the **stomach**, and for heaviness and ulcers;
and two veins over the loins are good to bleed … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 64v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

vein-table (concl.): the leg and foot veins (navel-, thigh-, shin-, ankle-, toe- and knee-veins)

1 …für allen gebresten;
2 und [des] gemächts;
3 … und [der] blausen;
4 und der gelen;
5 … und für die [s]ülen;
6 und die **wasser-sucht**;
7 und für das gesüchte in den nieren.
8 ¶ Item das **nabel[-adern]** ist gut[s] gelaussen für das pflass des buches;
9 und für die geschwulst der gemächt;
10 und für das gesüchte;
11 und für den grossen.
12 ¶ Item das adern [an den] hüffen, die sol man laussen für die [s]eulen;
13 und für den geschwören der gemächte;
14 und lang für die **wasser-sucht**.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

15 ¶ Item das adern an dem [Schenkel], die sol man laussen für … die geschwulst;

16 und [für] die roß-schinbain, [s]o [s]ie [geschwollen] sind;

17 gut[s] gelaussen für die wasser-sucht;

18 [die] sucht [s]o von der blausen;

19 und für die brenne der adern …;

20 und [Geschwüre], das wasser [s]ich uss-gessen … die **leber** in [s]onder.

21 ¶ Item zwo adern under den enkel [und] in baiden knien, die sol man laussen für das wasser der dürme …;

22 und für gesüchte der [Beine?].

23 ¶ Item zwo adern ob den knöden, … aber binnen:

24 die sol[t] du laussen für die [Schwellungen];

25 und für die geschwulst der blausen;

26 und für die adern der waden.

27 ¶ [Die zwei] adern zwüschen den zaichen sind gut[s] gelaussen für die geschwulst und für ander[e] gebresten des libes.

28 ¶ Item zwo adern in baiden knien:

29 die sol man laussen um [s]ant Laurencius-tag …;

30 und nauch der geburt ….

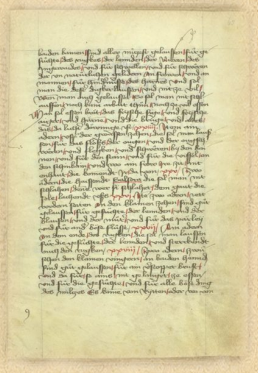
31 ¶ Item zwo adern by den knöden, [für] frawen[-sachen = Frauensachen] … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …for all ailments;
2 and the **genitals**;
3 … and the **bladder**;
4 and the gall;
5 … and for the **loins**;
6 and the **dropsy**;
7 and for the sickness in the **kidneys**.
8 ¶ Item, the **navel-vein** is good to bleed for the **flux of the belly**, the swelling of the **genitals**,
9 the sickness, and severe pain.
10 ¶ Item, the vein at the **hips** is bled for the **loins**, the ulcers of the **genitals**,
11 and chronically for the **dropsy**.
12 ¶ Item, the vein at the **thigh** is bled for the swelling and the **shins**;
13 when the shins are swollen, it is good to bleed for the **dropsy**, the sickness from the **bladder**,
14 the burning of the veins, and ulcers where the water has eaten itself out red;
15 … the **liver** in particular.
16 ¶ Item, two veins under the **ankles** and in both knees are bled for the **water of the intestines** and the sickness of the [legs].
17 ¶ Item, two veins above the ankles (inside) are bled for swellings, the swelling of the **bladder**,
18 and the veins of the **calves**.
19 ¶ The two veins **between the toes** are good to bleed for swelling and other ailments of the body.
20 ¶ Item, two veins in both knees are bled **around St Laurence's day** … and **after childbirth** ….
21 ¶ Item, two veins by the ankles, for **women's matters** … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 65r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

vein-table (foot/toe veins, nos. 26–29); post-bleeding diet note

1 …[die adern under den] knöden sind allas gut[s] gelaussen für gesüchte des buches, der lenden, der blausen …;

2 und für [s]chwollen;

3 … an frawen und an mannen;

4 für [die] gemächt [und] des houptes.

5 ¶ Wan man dick gelaussen hat, [s]o sol man … aussen kain anbiß thün noch ge-essen.

6 ¶ [M] Man sol essen beit das frü-essen spise … und grüne;

7 und die blüt-gat [spise];

8 und alle[s] die[s], das da kalt oder warme [ist].

9 ¶ Wan am adern-stat [an] der grossen zaichen, die sol man laussen für die [s]chwere der ougen;

10 und [s]chweren by den [Knöcheln];

11 und für den [s]tam der [s]chimblaim.

12 ¶ [xvi = 16.] Zwo adern über die [Ferse?] (Saltera[?]), die sol man [s]chlaben …;

13 wan [s]ie pflaubat, dem gaut die [s]ele [s]uchende.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

14 ¶ [xvii = 17.] Die zwo adern under den klainen zehen sind gut[s] gelaussen für gesüchte der lenden …;

15 und für die [s]chwere der blausen;

16 und für das pflassen …;

17 und für ander[e] böse flüsse.

18 ¶ [xviii = 18.] Item adern an dem an[fang] der zehen, die sol man laussen für die gesüchte der lenden … ¶ [xviiii = 19.] Zwo adern in den klainen zehen an baiden handen sind gut[s] gelaussen für am [Beklemmung der] brust;

19 und das pflass …;

20 und für die gesüchte;

21 und für alle böse ding des milges.

22 Es kome von [Kälte?] oder von … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …the veins under the **ankles** are all good to bleed for sickness of the **belly, the loins, the bladder** …;

2 and for swellings;

3 … in women and in men;

4 for the **genitals** and the head.

5 ¶ When one has bled often, one should take no snack afterward nor eat [heavily].

6 ¶ One should eat early light food soon — … greens;

7 blood-building foods;

8 and all that is cold or warm.

9 ¶ Item, a vein at the **great toe** is bled for **eye-ulcers**, ulcers by the ankles,

10 and the [trouble] of the **shins**.

11 ¶ **16th**:

12 two veins over the [heel], bled …;

13 for when they flow, the soul goes [faint].

14 ¶ **17th**:

15 two veins under the **small toes** are good to bleed for sickness of the **loins** …,

16 ulcers of the **bladder**, the flux, and other bad fluxes.

17 ¶ **18th**:

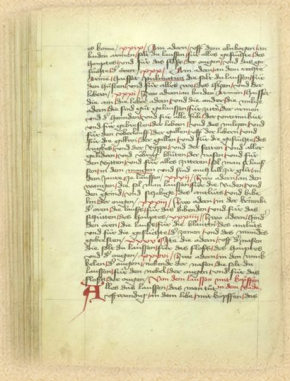
18 a vein at the base of the toes, bled for sickness of the **loins** … ¶ **19th**:

19 two veins in the **small toes/fingers of both hands** are good to bleed for a **tightness of the chest**,

20 the flux, sickness, and all bad things of the **spleen**;

21 it comes from cold or from … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 65v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

vein-table (concl., veins 20–26); then rubric "On bloodletting with cupping-cups (Schröpfköpfe)"

1 …es kome.

2 ¶ **[xx = 20.]** Item adern uff dem an-bogen [in] baiden armen:

3 die sol man laussen für alles gesüchte des houptes;

4 und für die [s]üsse der ougen;

5 und das gesüchte der oren.

6 ¶ **[xxi = 21.]** Item adern an dem rechten arme, haisset **[s]ublimatica**[?]:

7 die sol[t] du laussen für den hüsten … und [für] der leber.

8 ¶ **[xxii = 22.]** Zwo adern in baiden armen, [die ein] haisset die **leber-adern** und die ander die **milze-adern**, [die] sind gut[s] gelaussen zwüschen der armen;

9 … gut für alle füll …;

10 und für gebresten der **leber** und des **milzen**;

11 und für den [r]obfluss der **gallen** an der leber;

12 und für die **gilbi** der gallen;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

13 und für die gesüchte … der **rippen** und der **[s]eiten** und aller gelidern;

14 und [für] [r]obrig blüten …;

15 und für den [s]üttern;

16 … und sol man [s]ie laussen für den maugen.

17 ¶ **[xxiii = 23.]** Adern an den **wangen**:

18 die sol man laussen für … die geschwüre des anlüts und [die Übel] der oren.

19 ¶ **[xxiv = 24.]** Item adern under den **ougen**:

20 die sol[t] du laussen für das pflass des houptes und [die] ougen.

21 ¶ **[xxv = 25.]** Die adern uff der **nasen**:

22 die sol[t] du laussen für das pflass des houptes und [die] ougen.

23 ¶ **[xxvi = 26.]** Adern [im Winkel] nebende der nasen:

24 die sol[t] du laussen für [den] nebel der ougen und für das pflass der ougen.

25 ¶ **Von dem laussen mit kopffen.** ¶ [A] Alles das laussen, das man tüt … in dem libe, mit kopffen, das …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…it comes [from cold].

¶ **20th:** a vein at the **elbow** of both arms — bled for all sickness of the **head**,

the **flux of the eyes**, and the sickness of the **ears**.

¶ **21st:** a vein on the right arm, called the **sublimatica** — bled for **cough** and the **liver**.

¶ **22nd:** two veins in both arms — one called the **liver-vein**,

the other the **spleen-vein** — good to bleed between the arms;

good for all fullness, ailments of the **liver and spleen**, the overflow of the **gall** on the liver,

the **jaundice**, the sickness of the **ribs and sides** and all the limbs, excess bleeding, and **fever**;

… and bled for the **stomach**.

¶ **23rd:** veins on the **cheeks** — bled for ulcers of the **face** and the ills of the **ears**.

¶ **24th:** a vein under the **eyes** — bled for the **flux of the head** and the eyes.

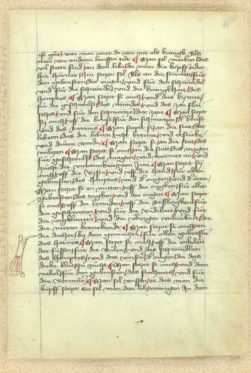
¶ **25th:** the vein on the **nose** — bled for the flux of the head and the eyes.

¶ **26th:** veins in the corner **beside the nose** — bled for the **dimness of the eyes** and the flux of the eyes.

¶ **On bloodletting with cupping-cups (Schröpfköpfe).** ¶ All the bloodletting that one does … in the body,

with **cupping-cups**, that … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 66r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

cupping: where to set the cupping-cups and what each placement treats (with a cupping-glass drawn in the margin)

1 …[das] ist gut, wan man woet da von nit als kranck, als man von ander[em] laussen tüt.

2 ¶ Man sol [s]etzen [an die] [s]tatt, [die] [s]ind in dem libe, da die kopff [s]ol[t] [s]etzen:

3 als an die **stirnen**, für den gebresten der **oren** und für den **[s]chwindel**;

4 und für die geschwulst und die **augen** … des houptes.

5 ¶ Man [s]etzet si ouch [auf] das **hirne**, für die geschwulst des **mundes** … für den [s]chmerzen.

6 ¶ Man [s]etzt si ouch off die **brust**, für den [s]chmerzen der brust und des **aufdems**;

7 [und auf] die statt der **leber**:

8 [für die,] die die leber [quält], … und [zu] abstillen.

9 ¶ Man [s]etzt si an die statt des **magens**, für die schwulst des magens;

10 und [zu] woarmen;

11 und zühe die [bösen Säfte].

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

12 ¶ Man [s]etzt si ouch off … die **hand**, für allen gebresten des **houptes**.

13 ¶ Man [s]etzt si an mitten off den **[r]ucken**, für allen gebresten des rucken …;

14 und [für] die [Geschwüre].

15 ¶ Man [s]etzt si ouch off die **drüsen by den gemächt**, für allen gebresten des **harnes**.

16 ¶ Man [s]etzt si ouch off die **ankelen [oder] der hüffen**, für die [s]eulen;

17 und [die] [s]chwullen;

18 des houptes;

19 und [für die], [die] da süchet in den hüffen [haben].

20 ¶ Man [s]etzt si ouch off den **nabel**, für gebresten des **gemächts** und für die **woarmü**.

21 ¶ Man sol wissen, das man die kopff [s]etzt:

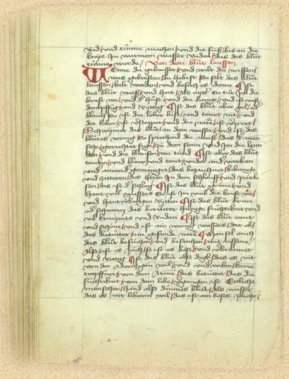
22 es sol man den lib [s]pannigen in dem …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …[cupping] is good, for one does not grow as weak from it as
from other (venous) bloodletting.
2 ¶ One should set [the cups] at the places in the body where the
cupping-cups should be set:
3 as on the **forehead**, for the ailment of the **ears**, for **dizziness**,
4 and for the swelling and the **eyes** of the head.
5 ¶ One also sets them on the **head**, for the swelling of the
mouth and for pain.
6 ¶ One sets them on the **chest**, for **chest-pain** and the **breath**;
7 and on the site of the **liver**, for those whom the liver troubles,
to soothe and still.
8 ¶ One sets them on the site of the **stomach**, for the swelling of
the stomach, to warm it,
9 and to draw out the [bad humours].
10 ¶ One sets them on … the **hand**, for all ailments of the **head**.
11 ¶ One sets them in the **middle of the back**, for all ailments of
the **back** and its ulcers.
12 ¶ One sets them on the **glands by the genitals**, for all
ailments of the **urine**.
13 ¶ One sets them on the **ankles or the hips**, for the **loins**, the
swelling, the head,
14 and those who have a sickness in the hips.
15 ¶ One sets them on the **navel**, for ailments of the **genitals** and
for **worms**.
16 ¶ Know that one sets the cups thus:
17 one should [tense] the body in the … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 66v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

cupping (concl.); then "On judging the bled blood" (diagnosis by colour and consistency)

1 …und timme machen;

2 und die füß, bis an die knie, in warmen wasser, bis das blüt timme woerde.

3 ¶ **Von dem blüt-laussen.** ¶ [W] Wenne du gelaussen, [und] du woisst, was [dir fehlt]:

4 [s]o sol[t] das blüt [s]chülle [besehen] woarn;

5 und besieh es.

6 ¶ [Ist] das blüt **woiß** und [wässrig], es tut [s]o weh der **brust** … und die **lunge**;

7 und [neigt zum] fluss.

8 ¶ Ist das blüt aber **gel**, [s]o ist die **leber** böse … und die leber ist [r]o-stopfet;

9 und die mate ist [s]chwarz.

10 ¶ [Beobachte] das blüt in dem wasser;

11 … [ist es] [s]chwarz, [s]e [s]ten der [s]ele in den sin und [die Glieder].

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

12 ¶ Ist aber das blüt **trucken und blau** …, das bezaichnet **melancoli** … ¶ [Ist] das blüt [gemengt] und haut [wässriges] wasser, es ist [s]in … ¶ Ist das blüt **[s]warz**, das bezaichnet **hizige [s]üchtblut**;

13 und vil [r]eugendt.

14 ¶ Ist das blüt aber **brunne** … und [in] woarmem wasser, und [r]oösne, so ist [es] gesunde mate.

15 ¶ Wan sol auch das blüt besehen [und] [s]ine kissen, als es [s]ich:

16 [ist] es kalt und [s]chwarm;

17 … [scheidet] es [s]ich von der weichen … und von [dem Serum] kome tropffner:

18 das bezaichnet, das die [s]üchtigkait von dem libe gewesen ist.

19 ¶ [Eines] menschen blüt, [das] als immer [trübe ist] …, [das] bezaichnet [ein] böse[s] [Übel] … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…and warm the feet, up to the knees, in warm water, until the blood thins.

¶ **On judging the bled blood.** ¶ When you have bled, and you wish to know what ails you:

the blood should be examined at once — look at it.

¶ If the blood is **white** and watery, it pains the **chest** and the **lungs**, and tends to flux.

¶ If the blood is **yellow**, the **liver** is bad and obstructed, and the matter is black.

¶ Watch the blood in water:

if it is **black**, it weighs upon the soul and the limbs.

¶ If the blood is **dry and livid-blue**, it signifies **melancholia**.

¶ If the blood is mingled and has watery serum, it is [phlegm].

¶ If the blood is **black**, it signifies **hot "sick-blood" (fever)**.

¶ But if the blood is **brown**, and in warm water turns **rosé**, it is of **healthy matter**.

¶ One should also examine the blood and its **clot** as it forms:

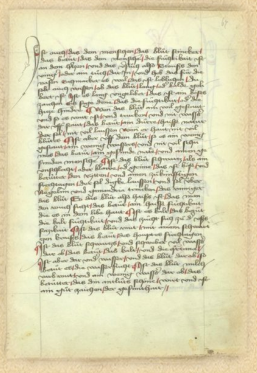
whether cold or warm;

… if it separates from the watery serum, and a droplet comes from the serum,

it signifies that **the sickness has gone out of the body**.

¶ A person's blood that is always [turbid] signifies a bad [disorder] … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 67r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

judging the bled blood (concl.): smell, clotting, foam, colour & serum as signs of health or disease

1 …es ouch, das dem menschen das blüt [s]immbert[?];

2 … und [s]o das [Blut] für die nasen [s]chmackt, [so] es woet … ¶ Du sol[t] auch woissen,

3 das [wenn] das blüt [s]o balde [gerinnt], es ist am böse[s] zaichen;

4 und [s]o sye dene die [s]üchti-blüt …;

5 und [ist es] truken und mit wasser [r]o, [s]o ist es ain böses:

6 das blüt [ist] dürre, haisse mature;

7 das selbe [s]ol vil laussen.

8 ¶ Item aber [wenn] off dem blüt … vil [s]chumes [ist], das baut [s]in gesunde mature.

9 ¶ Ist das blüt [s]chwartz … oder klare, [s]o … ist es böse;

10 … das sol [s]igle laussen.

11 ¶ Es das blüt als haisse ist, das baut [s]in haisse [s]üchtblut, das es in dem libe haut.

12 ¶ Ist es [kalt], das [macht] die kalt [s]üchti-blüt.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

13 ¶ Ist das blüt rout, [s]ame amen [s]chume, das baut das houptes [s]üch[t]blut.

14 ¶ Ist aber das blüt miltig, baut rout und [hat nur] am wenig wasser …,

15 das jm anlüts [s]chimt rout — und ist am gut zaichen der gesunde.

TRANSLATION

1 …also, [a sign is] how the person's blood [behaves];

2 … and if the blood **smells [foul]** at the nose, it [betokens disease].

3 ¶ Know also that if the blood **clots quickly**, it is a bad sign — then it is "sick-blood";

4 and if it is dry and [reddish] with water, that too is a bad sign:

5 the blood is of a dry, hot nature;

6 such a one should bleed much.

7 ¶ But if there is much **foam** on the blood, that makes for a healthy nature.

8 ¶ If the blood is **black** … or [too] clear, it is bad;

9 such a one should bleed at once.

10 ¶ If the blood is so **hot**, it makes for hot **"sick-blood" (fever)** in the body.

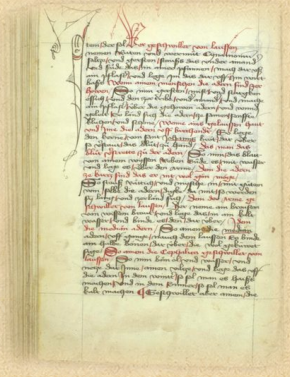
11 ¶ If it is **cold**, that makes for **cold sick-blood**.

12 ¶ If the blood is **red** with a foam, that makes for **head-sickness**.

13 ¶ But if the blood is **mild, red, and has only a little serum**,

14 so that it makes the face shine **red** — that is a **good sign of health**.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 67v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

wound aftercare: staunching the blood and treating a swollen vein (barley poultice, carob, turnip, "half a bean," oil-and-water compress)

[1] [red] **Wer geschwillet von laussen.** ¶ [I]tem [wenn es] geschwillet von laussen:

[2] nemen [Kräuter] und … [s]albe, und gersten, [s]tauch, und [s]üde die [s]üssen in amer pfannen, [s]mag dar an,

[3] [als] am [s]chlag, und lege jn, das die [Geschwulst] … ¶ Wem amen menschen die adern sind [s]e-[s]chworen:

[4] [s]o nim gersten …, und essich, … und [lege] [r]ober die geschworen adern;

[5] und [auf] [welchem] gelid [auch] [s]ich die adern [s]e-[s]chworen.

[6] ¶ Wenne ame gelaussen haut, und [s]ine adern [s]o … burgande:

[7] [s]o lege [ein Pflaster] von sant Johannes-brot [r]ober, das man das blüt [s]chwette zü hand.

[8] ¶ [Oder] nim das blau von amen woissen [r]uben, [s]üde es mit wasser, und binde es den[n] [r]obers.

[9] ¶ [Für] die **medin-adern**:

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

10 [s]o amen die median-adern off der [s]pange [s]tauch dem laussen [schwillt], [s]o binde am halbe bönen,

11 die [r]ober, [s]ol gebüret.

12 ¶ [S]o amen die **cephalica** geschwiller von laussen:

13 [s]o nim öl und wasser, und merge des linne, … und lege das off die adern off dem winckel.

14 [S]o die adern [r]o vil [s]chwillt, [s]ol[t] man es [warm] machen;

15 und in dem [andern Fall] sol man es kalt machen.

16 ¶ **Geschwiller aber amen die [adern]…**

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

When [a vein] swells from bloodletting. ¶ Item, if it swells from bloodletting:

take [herbs] and a **salve**, and pounded **barley**, boil them in a pan, and lay it on as a **poultice**,

so that the swelling [subsides].

¶ For a person whose veins are swollen:

take **barley** … and **vinegar**, and lay it over the swollen veins, on whatever limb the veins are swollen.

¶ When someone has bled and his veins **bleed/burst**, lay a plaster of **St John's bread (carob)** over it,

to staunch the blood at once.

¶ Or take the pulp of a **white turnip**, boiled with water, and bind it over [the wound].

¶ For the **median vein**:

if it swells at the bend after bleeding, bind **half a bean** over it, as is fitting.

¶ For the **cephalica**:

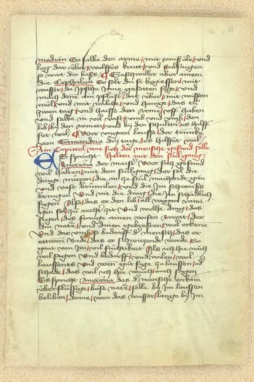
if it swells from bleeding, take **oil and water**, soak linen, and lay it on the vein at the bend;

if the vein swells much, make it **warm**;

otherwise make it **cold**.

¶ **But if someone's veins swell …** ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 68r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

wound aftercare (concl.); new chapter "How to keep healthy through the bowel-movement (Stuhlgang)" (Avicenna)

1 …[für die] median:

2 [s]albe den arme mit [r]osen-öl, und lege dar [r]obe … und [es] [s]till-stüsen der haisse.

3 ¶ Geschwiller aber amen die **cephalica**:

4 [s]o [s]ol[t] du si begiessen mit wasser, da [s]ye jme gesatten **saffran**;

5 und mag dene am pflag … wassen malch und … honig, das thü … haisse.

6 ¶ Und [s]albe [es] vil … und [r]omb den lib … by den [s]egulter;

7 es hilfft [s]er wol.

8 ¶ Wer amen [ein hartes Geschwür] von laussen [bleibt], [lege] **Ermandia** dry tag[e];

9 es hilffet wol.

10 ¶ **Ein capitel, wie sich der mensch gesund halten sol[t] mit dem [s]tülgang.** ¶ [E] Es [s]praug **Avicenna** der maist[er]:

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

11 woer [s]ich gesund woil haben an dem [s]tülgang, der sol die ding miten, die in ge … machend grin und [r]ast-krümblen.

12 ¶ Und [brauche] die ding, die in [regen / regulieren] … als das es den lib all-woegen [offen] mage;

13 und welche ding [ihn beschweren], das [s]ol[t] er [befragen] amen woisen arzat,

14 das in die mate und amen ge-brechen woel erkane;

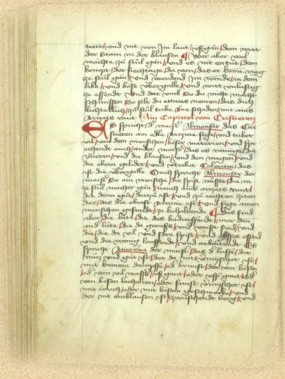
15 und daromb [s]o bedarff der mensch, das er etwan bade und [ge]swenkt woerde … und [man] sol kein über-flüssige böse mate by jm laussen beliben;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

…for the **median vein**:
salve the arm with **rose-oil**, lay a [poultice] over it, and it stills the heat.
¶ But if someone's **cephalica** swells:
douse it with water in which **saffron** has been boiled;
and then apply a plaster of soft **milk** with … **honey**, laid on warm.
¶ And salve it well, around the body, by the shoulder;
it helps very well.
¶ If a hard swelling remains from bloodletting, apply **Ermandia [Armenian bole?]** for three days;
it helps well.
¶ **A chapter on how a person should keep healthy through the bowel-movement (Stuhlgang).** ¶ Master **Avicenna** says:
whoever would keep healthy in the bowel-movement should avoid the things that give him **griping and cramps**,
and use the things that keep the body regular and open;
and whatever burdens him, he should consult **a wise physician who well knows the matter and the ailment**;
and therefore a person needs sometimes to **bathe and be purged**;
and one should let **no excess bad matter remain in the body** … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 68v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the evacuation regimen: who needs purging; the healthy stool comes "without bad vapour" (Avicenna)

1 …[man] [s]ol[t] [es] machen nauch amer arzate raut;
2 und [s]o den [zit] ist, und zü [r]echt an zü-tün, [so] das die obrest genese ist,
3 und [s]o ze amen menschen gesund ze behaltende.
4 ¶ Das sind aber die lüt, die das [Purgieren] [s]o mer den[n] ander[e] lüte [bedürfen]:
5 die da **grausse und vaiste** sind;
6 und die da vil und [s]üre spise und obses essend;
7 und die **woenig laussende oder arbaitende**.
8 ¶ Es [s]pricht **Avicenna** der maist[er], das der flüsse, der da gut ist, [ist] der,
9 der da kompt **mit kainem dampffe**;
10 [denn der], der von bösem [kommt], … gaut mit [üblem] geruch;
11 oder mit [r]ouch;
12 oder mit bösem gesmag;

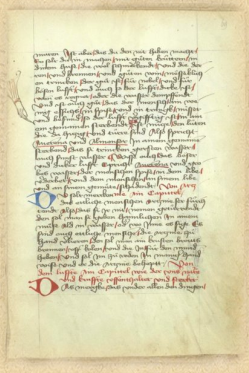
This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

13 und [mit] anblausen [und] geschwen … ¶

TRANSLATION

1 …one should [purge] according to a physician's counsel;
2 and when the time is right, to do it rightly, [so] that it is the best cure and keeps a person healthy.
3 ¶ But these are the people who need **purging** more than others:
4 those who are **big and fat**;
5 those who eat much **sour food and fruit**;
6 and those who **bleed little or work little**.
7 ¶ Master **Avicenna** says that the bowel-movement that is good and healthy is the one that comes **without any [bad] vapour**;
8 for that which comes from bad [matter] goes with a **foul smell**,
9 or with **"smoke,"** or with a **bad taste**, and with **bloating and swelling** … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 69r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

a chapter on administering medicine; then "On the air" (one of the six non-naturals)

1 …und an [s]inen gemüte pflegende.

2 ¶ **[Von der Arznei / dem Arzt:] ein capitel.** ¶ [D] Das etliche menschen arzne [gern] nemen …,

3 als das [s]i jr mit [willen] nemen gütlich:

4 den sol man [s]i geben gar-michten in amer miße, als in [warmem] wasser, ob … es [s]üße [sei].

5 ¶ Es sind ouch etliche menschen, die jr arzne [widerstreben] ze nemen:

6 den sol man … und sol jm zü [r]eden von mancher hand woise, [so] das [s]ie die arzne behept.

7 ¶ Von dem Lufft:

8 ein capitel, wie der Lufft gesund macht und kranck … und [s]tarcker. ¶ [D] Das mag von … allen den dingen …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …and tending to his disposition.

2 ¶ On medicine [/the physician]:

3 a chapter. ¶ Some people take medicine willingly, of their own accord:

4 these one should give it **fasting, in a measure**, as in [warm] water, if it be sweet.

5 ¶ There are also some who resist taking their medicine:

6 these one should coax, and talk to in many ways, so that they keep the medicine down.

7 ¶ On the air:

8 a chapter — how the air makes one healthy or sick … and stronger. ¶ This may come of all things …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

folio 69v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the air and the "vital spirit" (uroscopy illustration: a physician examining a urine flask)

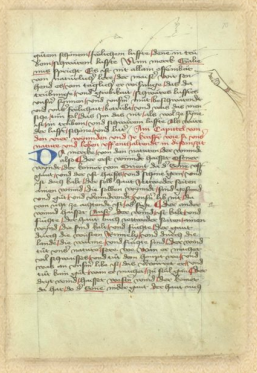
1 …das müg-es ist, das [s]chädliger sye;
2 und es von naturen [r]o-wandler;
3 als me der lufft, wan von dem lufft [wird er eingezogen] mit den [s]inne und mit dem [Atem],
4 [r]o-handt in die lungen und in die adern, die da jm sind;
5 und woet der lufft mit den lieblichen gaiste des blutes gemischet.
6 Daromb ist der lufft gut[s], [s]o [nährt] er die naturen;
7 ist er bös, so machet er [s]ie [s]chwer und trüb.
8 Der gute lufft ist auch der [s]chöne, wan[n] alles das woerket … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …it may be the more **harmful**;
2 and it changes by nature;
3 so too the **air** — for the air is drawn in through the **senses** and the **breath**,
4 passing into the **lungs** and the **veins** that are in one,
5 and the air becomes **mixed with the lovely spirit of the blood (the vital spirit)**.
6 Therefore the air is good when it **nourishes nature**;
7 if it is bad, it makes nature **heavy and turbid**.
8 Good air is also the **fair, clear** air, for it works upon all that … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 70r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the air (cont.): the four winds and their effect on health (east/north good; south/west bad)

1 …[Die Winde, die von **Osten** und **Norden** kommen,] sind gut und gesund, und [s]o trucknent,

2 und [s]ubtiler und [s]chöner.

3 ¶ Aber der [Wind], [s]o von **Süden** kompt und von **Westen**, sind böse,

4 wann [s]ie [s]ind warme und füchte und [be-]pewolessen, und die da kompt von der Sonnen [her] … und [s]o [s]üchte bringende.

5 ¶ Der ander woend kompt [s]o von [Süden / Westen]:

6 der ist böse, und [s]o [s]üchte bringende … und [s]o [s]o haisser … ¶ … und die [Winde],

7 die da von **Osten** [und] **Norden** [kommen], sind gut und gesund.

8 ¶ [So sind] aber die woend, die da von **Süden** und von **Westen** [kommen], böse und [s]üchte bringend … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 …[The winds that come from the **East** and the **North**] are **good and healthy**, drying, subtler and clearer.

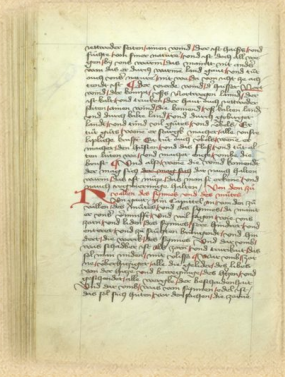
2 ¶ But the winds that come from the **South** and the **West** are **bad**,

3 for they are warm and moist and clouded/"befogged," and [come from] the Sun … and bring sickness.

4 ¶ … the winds from the **East and North** are good and healthy;

5 ¶ whereas the winds from the **South and West** are bad and bring sickness … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 70v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

the winds take their nature from the lands they cross; then a new chapter "On motion/exercise and rest"

1 …[von] [s]etwoder [s]üten amen woend:

2 der ist haisse und füchte von [s]iner mature, und ist gut …;

3 wann er durch warm[e] land gaut, und [r]üt ouch von warm[e] mature … ¶ Der [Nord-]woend kompt [s]o von [Norden];

4 ist kalt und trucken;

5 der haut ouch [von] [s]etwoder-[s]üten amen woend, die [s]o kompt [r]oss kalten land und durch kalte land …;

6 und [s]ind vil gut.

7 ¶ Es ist gut[s], wann er [s]üchte … [und gibt] leybliche krafft;

8 es ist auch [s]chöne woare, und macht den [s]chönen;

9 aber [es ist schädlich] altem lüten … omb die böse.

10 ¶ Und als[o] woare die woend kommende, [so] mag [s]ich der mensch [davor schützen] … ¶ Von dem [zü-vallen] des [Leibes-Bewegens?] und des müttes:

11 ein capitel. ¶ [D] Der mensch … sol [s]ich [bewegen] … und [s]o von der [s]onnen … und [Gesundheit] behalten;

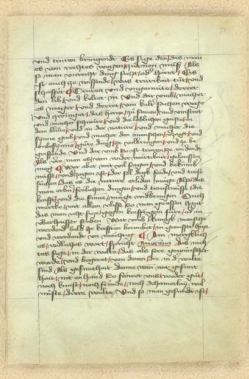
This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

12 … [eine maßvolle] bewegniste gschehen [s]olle …;
13 das [s]ol [s]ich güten vor den [s]achen, die [schaden] … ¶

TRANSLATION

1 …[from] either side, a wind:
2 it is hot and moist by its nature, and is good …;
3 for it passes through warm land and takes on a warm nature.
4 ¶ The **north wind** comes from the north;
5 it is cold and dry;
6 it too has a wind from either side that comes out of cold lands and through cold lands …;
7 and these are very good.
8 ¶ It is good when it drives off sickness … and gives bodily strength;
9 it is also **fair weather**, and **makes the flesh fair**;
10 but it is harmful to **old people**, because of the [bad humours].
11 ¶ And as the winds come, a person may protect himself [from the bad ones] … ¶ On motion/exercise and rest:
12 a chapter. ¶ A person should exercise himself … and [guard against] the Sun …, and so keep his health;
13 … a measured exercise should be taken …;
14 and one should beware of the things that [do harm] … ¶

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 71r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Sixth non-natural: the passions of the soul (anger, sorrow, grief)

1 … und tewren bewegende.

2 Es sige denn das man es von rechtes wegen [s]chuldig [s]ye [s]oll, on müß[?].

3 Als [s]o man zornig ist, der zorn das [s]oll gicht[?].

4 Es ist auch gewiss, das es traurikait tut.

5 Und [s]igest[?] er … und unfromütet[?].

6 Der zorn hat lib;

7 und der zorn macht es traurig;

8 und der zorn von lib [s]chen[?] wenig und grossi zit das herze zu [s]amen.

9 Und [s]o mert man der [s]chwäre und die löblichen gei[s]t in dem blůt;

10 und in der nature;

11 und macht die [s]inne grob;

12 und macht den men[s]chen [s]chwer.

13 … gute ding ie [s]nel bringen und begreissende[?].

14 Und der zorn ist oft trawrende und antlas[?];

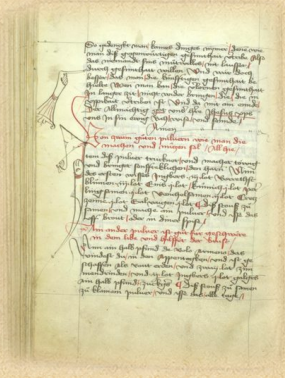
This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

als der man es von ander mutwillen gela[s]sen mag.
¶ Wer aber mit vil zorn und bekümmernisse und hass ist, der [s]ol [s]ich [s]eid[?] und tro[s]t [s]uchen,
das es die nature erleiden möge;
als das man eben fröhlichen dingen, und traure niessen[?];
die hass und die [s]inne müsse[?] bekümmern.
Auch mercke mit allem fliß, [s]o man gessen haut[?] …

TRANSLATION

… and stirring up [the spirits].
Unless one is bound by right and duty to it, [anger] should be avoided.
For when a man is angry, that anger brings on illness[?].
It is also certain that it causes sorrow.
… Anger seizes the body;
anger makes [the heart] heavy;
in a short while it draws the heart together, so that the heaviness increases and the noble spirits in the blood [are oppressed];
it works upon the [bodily] nature, makes the senses coarse, and makes a man heavy [in spirit].
… good things should be brought [to mind] quickly and grasped.
Anger is often mournful and joyless;
a man should let it go, as he would any other wilfulness.
¶ But whoever is full of anger, worry and hatred should seek calm and comfort,
so that his nature may bear it — namely, that he busy himself with cheerful things and shun grief;
he must temper hatred and the [agitated] senses.
Mark also, with all diligence, when one has eaten …

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 71v — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Close of the regimen (Amen); rubric: "Of good powders — how to make and use them"

1 … [s]o gedenke man, was es ein irer myner[?] … gene, wie man die gegenwürtiger ge[s]chmechait[?] tribe;

2 al[s]o das niemand [s]ine mutwille mit lauter durch ge[s]chmechait wölle.

3 Und was doch ba[s]er, das man die künftiger ge[s]chmechait begehe;

4 wen man kan die [s]elben on ge[s]chmechait jn lange zit moget veider bringen, die [s]o löppkait[?] tribe.

5 I[s]t.

6 Und du mit am end die Allmächtig got und alle, Jhesus Cri[s]t, uns jn [s]in ewig reich vereze und [s]ende.

7 **Amen.** ¶ Von gůten pulver, wie man die machen und nutzen [s]ol.

8 / Allhie / Item dis pulver trucken[?] [s]ind, macher[?] törent[?] und bringet [s]enftiklichen den garn[?].

9 Nim des wi[s]ses Jngbers iij lot;

10 Galgan j lot;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

11 Negelin iij lot;
12 Cubeben iij lot;
13 Mu[s]chat iij lot;
14 Blümen [Mu[s]katblůt] iij lot;
15 Eris[?] j lot;
16 Zimmet j lot;
17 Galgan j lot;
18 … bling[?]samen iij lot;
19 langel[?] samen iij lot;
20 Crez same j lot;
21 Salvaien j lot … [s]ame, und mache ein pulver;
22 und ist das best;
23 brout, lade[?] in jmal[?] [s]to[s]s.
24 ¶ Am ander pulver i[s]t gůt für vergicht und [s]chwere in dem lib, und hilfet der bö[s]i.
25 ¶ Nim am halb pfund de bolo armeno — das wundast[?] dur in den Apenuosken[?],
26 und i[s]t ge[s]chaffen als rout erden — und zwag[?] lot.
27 Nim mandrinder[?] und i[s]t lot;
28 Jngbers iij lot;
29 galget[?] am halb pfund;
30 zucke[?].
31 ¶ Dis [s]tous zu [s]amen zu klainen pulver, und ist als alle täg.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

1 … [s]o let a man consider [this regimen carefully] … as to how one should temper present pleasures,
2 so that no one indulge his wilfulness through sheer self-gratification;
3 for it is better that a man have regard for pleasures to come,
4 since those who live in such laxity[?] cannot long sustain themselves without harm.
5 — And do Thou at the last [grant] that Almighty God and all [the saints], Jesus Christ,
6 send and bring us into His eternal kingdom.
7 **Amen.** ¶ Of good powders — how one shall make and use them.
8 / Here:
9 / This powder, [when the herbs are] dried, warms[?] and gently [settles the stomach].
10 Take of white ginger 3 lot;
11 galangal 1 lot;
12 cloves 3 lot;
13 cubeb 3 lot;
14 nutmeg 3 lot;
15 mace ("Blümen") 3 lot;
16 iris[?] 1 lot;
17 cinnamon 1 lot;
18 galangal 1 lot;
19 … [a] seed 3 lot;
20 "langel"[?] seed 3 lot;
21 cress-seed 1 lot;
22 sage 1 lot … seed;
23 and make a powder — it is the best.
24 [Take it with] bread, [or] in a broth[?].

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

25 ¶ The second powder is good for cramps/gout ("vergicht") and for heaviness in the body, and it relieves the malady.

26 ¶ Take half a pound of *bolus armenus* — which is mined in the Apennines[?] and is formed like red earth — and two[?] lot.

27 Take [+ another drug][?] and … lot;

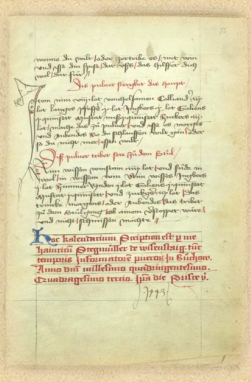
28 ginger 3 lot;

29 galangal[?] half a pound;

30 sugar[?].

31 ¶ Pound these together into a fine powder, and [take it] thus every day.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 72r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

two recipes, then the scribe's colophon

1 **Red rubric:** *Diß pulver sterket die houpt*

2 Item nim[m] ½ lot wachel-samen, collander iij lot, langes pfeffer ½ lot, yngbers j lot, Galgen j quintat,

3 muskat-nuss j quintat, zuckers iiij lot.

4 Mache das zu pulver, und iß es morgens und abendes, e[h] du zu schlauffen wölt … das jß du michtel essen.

5 **Red rubric:** *Diß pulver tribet sere zü dem stül*

6 Item win-stain iiij lot, und süde in wol;

7 … yngbers ij lot, zimmet-rynden j lot, Galgen j quintat, muskat j quintat, und zuckers iiij lot.

8 Das treibe morgens oder abendes.

9 Diß tribet zu dem stülgang, ob ainen [es] stopffet wäre, und nit schlissen möchte.

10 (f.

11 72v, scan 147, is blank.)

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

COLOPHON

[1] “This calendar was written by me, Heinrich Stegmüller of Wiesensteig,
[2] at that time schoolmaster of the boys (informator puerorum) in Buchau,
[3] in the year of the Lord 1443, on the very day of St Prisca the Virgin (18 January).”
[4] Above the colophon stand two powder recipes —
[5] a head-strengthening spice powder and a gentle laxative.

EDITORIAL NOTE

The scribe's colophon (f. 72r, in red):

Hoc kalendarium scriptum est per me Hainricum Stegmüller de Wisenstaig, tunc temporis informatorem puerorum in Buchow. Anno domini millesimo quadringentesimo quadragesimo tertio. Ipsa die Prisce virginis.

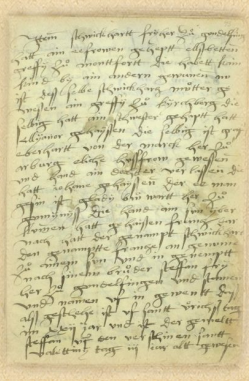
(Beneath, in a slightly later hand: "1443".)

= "This calendar was written by me, **Heinrich Stegmüller of Wiesensteig**, at that time **schoolmaster / tutor of the boys (informator puerorum) in Buchau**. In the year of the Lord one thousand four hundred forty-three, **on the very day of St Prisca the Virgin (18 January 1443)**."

Verification note: re-read directly from the f. 72r image (decorated red initial H). The final line reads "ipsa die prisce v[irginis]" — St Prisca the Virgin, 18 January — not "[Pasce/Pauli]" as an earlier draft had it. This is corroborated by the January calendar (f. 1v), which lists "Prisce virginis" on 18 January, and is consistent with the catalogue date of 1443.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

Later Additions



folio 73r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

Genealogy of the von Gundelfingen, in the hand of Katharina, Countess of Werdenberg

Der genampt[t] Schwickhart hatt zwo schwestern gehept[t]:
die ain ist gewesen ain aeptissin [= Aebtissin] ze Buchau, hatt gehaissen Barbara;
die ander Katterina, greffin [= Graefin] zu Werdeberg [= Werdenberg], geborne fry[in] [= Freiin] von Gundelfingen.
Dess als [= dies alles] hab ich mitt miner [eigen] hand ein geschriben am Mentag [= Montag] nach Reminiscere im [...] jar.
-- [Signed:] Katterina, greffin zu Werdeberg, geborne fry[in] zu Gundelfingen,
[mit] miner hand geschrift [= geschrieben].
[Below:
a monogram 'KH';
a line of cipher-letters (a secret alphabet);
and the motto] Mein hofnung zu Gott [= My hope is in God].

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

TRANSLATION

A connected pedigree, in a later (early-16th-century) hand, of the barons von Gundelfingen:

Schwickhart, baron of Gundelfingen, his wife Elsbeth (Elisabeth), countess of Montfort (who bore him no child),

his mother (a countess of Kirchberg), her sister Eleonore -- who married Count Eberhart von der Mark,

lord of Werdenberg[?] -- and so down to Stephan, baron of Gundelfingen.

It closes:

'The said Schwickhart had two sisters:

the one was an abbess at Buchau, named Barbara;

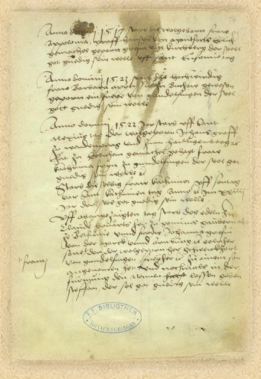
the other Katharina, countess of Werdenberg, nee baroness von Gundelfingen.

All this I have written with my own hand on the Monday after [the Sunday] Reminiscere in the year [...].' Signed:

'Katharina, countess of Werdenberg, nee baroness of Gundelfingen,

written with my own hand,' followed by a monogram 'KH,' a line of cipher-letters, and the motto 'My hope is in God.'

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library



folio 74r — the original leaf

TRANSCRIPTION

obituaries (deaths), early-16th-century hand

1 Anno [Domini] 1517 starb die wolgeboren frow **Appolonia**,
… geborn frow von **Kirchberg**,

2 der seel gott gnädig sin wölle.

3 Uf sant Tiburtius tag.

4 Anno domini 1523 starb die hochwürdig frow **Barbara**,
äbtissin zu Buchau gewesen,

5 geborn ain frow von **Gundelfingen**, der seel gott gnädig sin
wölle.

6 Anno domini 1522 starb … der wolgeboren **Johann …**,
[domprobst] zu **Buchau** …;

7 [und] frow **Cathrina**, frÿin zu **Gundelfingen**, der seel gott
gnädig sin wölle.

8 *Item starb die selig frow Cathrina uf sant … tag, anno … xiiii
[1514?] jar …*

9 Uff … tag starb das edel und wolgeboren herr **Ludwig**,
[Reichserbschenk?] zu …, und frow **Johanna** greffin …;

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

10 … herr **Eberhartt von Gundelfingen**, Freiher, … der seel gott gnädig sin wölle.

11 *Stamp at foot:* F.

12 F.

13 Bibliothek Donaueschingen (the Fürstlich-Fürstenbergische Hofbibliothek).

TRANSLATION

1 Later additions in two sixteenth-century hands turned the end-leaves into a memorial of the noble house of von Gundelfingen and the imperial ladies’

2 abbey of Buchau —

3 obituaries of 1514–1523, including Barbara, abbess of Buchau,

4 with the motto “Mein Hoffnung zu Gott.”

EDITORIAL NOTE

These additions show the book passing through the **von Gundelfingen** family — closely tied to the free imperial **abbey of Buchau** (a *Damenstift* for noblewomen, where a Gundelfingen daughter, Barbara, was abbess) — and used over generations as a memorial register, before entering the **Fürstenberg court library at Donaueschingen** and, ultimately, the Schoenberg Collection at Penn.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

Summary & Conclusions

What the book is. LJS 463 is a small **parchment handbook of practical astrological medicine**, written and signed in **1443** by **Heinrich Stegmüller of Wiesensteig**, who describes himself as the *informator puerorum* (schoolmaster / tutor of boys) at **Buchau** on the Federsee, in the diocese of Constance. It is not a learned Latin treatise but a richly illustrated **German-language vademecum** that gathers, in one place, everything a literate layperson or practitioner needed to align everyday health care with the heavens. Its 53 pen-and-wash pictures make it as much a picture-book as a text.

How it is organised. The book moves from time-keeping to the body in five linked parts:

- **A liturgical calendar for the diocese of Constance (f. 1r–18v).** Twelve months, each on three pages, give the saints' feasts in Latin (including local saints such as **Conrad of Constance**, **Verena**, **Gall**, **Magnus**, **Afra**, **Ulrich**, and the **dedication of Constance cathedral**), together with — and this is the book's distinctive feature — for every month a **German health-regimen** ("what to eat and drink, when to bathe, when and where to let blood"), a line stating the **length of day and night and the sun's zodiac sign**, a first-person **mnemonic verse** spoken by the month, a **zodiac roundel**, and a **labor-of-the-month** roundel. Each regimen is placed under the name of a famous authority — **Almansor, Hippocrates, Galen, "Johannes," Avicenna, Averroes, Serapion, Constantine the African, Mesue, Plato** — giving the homely advice an air of medical authority.
- **A "Zodiac-and-the-body" treatise (melothesia, f. 19r–28v),** prefaced by a list of the unlucky **"Egyptian days."** It explains

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

which part of the body each zodiac sign rules (Aries the head … Pisces the feet) and lays down the cardinal rule of medieval astro-medicine: **never cut (bleed or operate on) the body part governed by the sign the moon is currently in.**

- **A treatise on the seven planets (f. 29v–37v),** each painted as its Roman god above the zodiac "houses" it rules, with notes on the planet's qualities and on the temperament and fortunes of those born under it; with a roundel of **two astronomers observing the night sky (f. 41v).**
- **The four temperaments / complexions (f. 43r–45v)** — sanguine, choleric, phlegmatic, melancholic — each with a genre scene and a short character-sketch.
- **A practical treatise on bloodletting, regimen and simple remedies (f. 46r–72r),** illustrated with phlebotomy scenes and culminating in the **"Zodiac Man"** diagram (f. 54v) and two ready **powder recipes** (a "head-strengthening" spice powder and a laxative). It ends with **Stegmüller's colophon.**

The governing idea. Everything in the book serves one practical programme: **keep the body's four humours in balance by timing diet, bathing, and especially bloodletting to the calendar, the season, the sun's sign and the moon's position.** Health is presented as a matter of *measure* (moderation) and of *timing* — the verses and regimens repeat, month by month, what to eat, what to avoid, and whether the moment is safe for the lancet.

Why it matters.

- It is a **dated, signed, localised** witness (Buchau / Constance, 1443) to how astrological medicine was actually practised and taught in fifteenth-century **Swabia**, in the vernacular and for everyday use.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

- Its **picture cycle** — full sets of zodiac signs, labors of the months, planetary gods, temperaments, a Zodiac Man and bloodletting scenes — makes it an unusually complete visual encyclopaedia of the late-medieval "calendar-and-health" tradition.
- Its **after-life is documented in the book itself:** later hands turned the end-leaves into a **family memorial** of the barons **von Gundelfingen** and the imperial ladies' abbey of **Buchau** (obituaries of 1514–1523, including **Barbara, abbess of Buchau**, and a note in the hand of **Katharina, Countess of Werdenberg, née von Gundelfingen**, with her motto *"Mein Hoffnung zu Gott"*). It later belonged to the **Fürstenberg court library at Donaueschingen** (its stamp is on the leaves) and finally to the **Lawrence J. Schoenberg Collection at the University of Pennsylvania.**

In short, LJS 463 is a **1443 illustrated German almanac of astrological medicine** — calendar, zodiac, planets, temperaments and bloodletting bound into one — that doubled, in the next century, as the memorial book of a Swabian noble family connected to Buchau Abbey.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

A Statistical Profile of the Text

Data that could be used to model, generate or recreate manuscripts of this kind — computed from the transcription itself.

Everything below is **computed programmatically from the original-language transcription itself** (scripts: outputs/stylo.py, stylo2.py, stylo3.py), not estimated. The **German corpus** = the Part IV treatise prose + the Part I monthly health-regimens + the day/night lines + the verses; the English translations and editorial apparatus are excluded, and [?], […] and bracketed supplements are stripped before counting. The **Latin calendar** is profiled separately. Counts reflect this edition's *semi-diplomatic readings*, so they describe the transcription as it stands (a few tokens are still uncertain), not a critical text.

A. Corpus size & texture (German)

Measure	Value
Running words (tokens)	18,119
Distinct word-forms (types)	2,408
Type–token ratio	0.133 (very repetitive — a formulaic register)
Clauses (split on ¶ and .:: /)	1,962
Mean clause length	9.3 words (median 8) — short, breath-length units

B. 30 most frequent words

und 1215 · die 798 · der 662 · das 502 · ist 442 · in 393 · dem 389 · so 371 · es 315 · den 301 · man 279 · laussen 247 · von 223 · an 208 · sol 188 · sind 177 · mit 169 · du 162 · zü 157 · als 149 · wan 139 · für 135 · des 115 · er 110 · solt 109 · ze 108 · ouch 105 · am 101 · haut 94 · adern 94.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

und alone is **6.7 %** of every running word — the single most diagnostic feature.

C. Thematic vocabulary — top content words (function words removed)

laussen 245 (to let blood) · solt 109 (shalt) · adern 94 (veins) · zaichen 82 (zodiac signs) · blüt 66 (blood) · menschen 62 · sonne 57 · maister 53 (authority) · baden 51 (to bathe) · essen 47 · böse 46 (bad) · wasser 46 · spricht 44 (says) · nature 42 · libe 41 (body) · machet 40 · spise 35 (food) · tag 35 · lüte 35 (people) · mön 33 (moon) · himel 33 (heaven) · haisse 31 (hot) · planeten 31 · hize 31 (heat). → The lexicon is pure medical-astrology: *bloodletting, veins, signs, sun/moon/planets, body, food, heat/cold.*

D. What clauses begin with (the parataxis signature)

und 28.0 % · der 5.5 % · es 5.3 % · die 5.2 % · das 4.4 % · wan 4.2 % · man 2.7 % · als 2.6 % · so 2.6 % · ist 2.3 % · von 1.8 % · in 1.7 % · wer 1.7 % · aber 1.5 % · du 1.5 % · item 1.3 % · dar 1.0 % · oder 0.9 %. → **More than a quarter of all clauses open with "und."** Relentless "and"-chaining + the paragraph mark ¶ is the backbone of the prose.

E. Clause-initial letters

u 27.8 % · d 20.9 % · w 8.9 % · a 6.8 % · e 6.6 % · i 5.6 % · m 3.6 % · s 3.5 % · o 3.1 % · v 3.0 % · r 2.7 % · g 1.7 % · z 1.5 % · h 1.3 %. → Nearly **half** of all clauses start with **u-** (*und*) or **d-** (*der/die/das/dem/du/dar*); **w-** = *wan/wer/wie/wenn.*

F. Letter frequency (inside German words)

e 14.7 % · n 10.9 % · s 9.0 % · d 7.7 % · a 7.1 % · i 6.6 % · t 5.4 % · r 5.2 % · u 4.3 % · l 4.2 % · m 3.6 % · h 3.2 % · o 3.2 % · c 2.6 % · g 2.3 % · b 1.9 % · w 1.8 % · ü 1.3 % · f 1.2 % · z 1.0 % · … · ä 0.13 % · ß 0.09 % · x 0.02 %. → The high **ü** (1.3 %) and the rarity

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

of ä/ß are Alemannic markers.

G. Most frequent word-pairs & triples (the connective scaffolding)

Bigrams: in dem 142 · und die 86 · sol man 74 · an dem 64 · von dem 60 · und für 54 · in den 48 · für die 47 · und ist 46 · und der 46 · solt du 46 · ist der 44 · der sonne 42 · man laussen 38 · das blüt 36 · der maister 32 · man sol 32.

Trigrams: in dem libe 24 · sol man laussen 23 · so sol man 22 · und für die 22 · so solt du 20 · zü welher zit 14 · es spricht avicenna 13 · die sol man 12 · der sonne in 12 · man laussen für 12 · in das bad 11.

H. Formulaic structures (the reusable templates), by frequency

Template	Count	Function
wan …	139	causal/temporal tail ("for / when")
man sol / sol man …	106	impersonal prescription
du solt / solt du …	71	2nd-person command
… und für (den/die) …	54	bloodletting indication-list
das blüt …	38	blood as topic
… der maister N …	32	authority naming
Es spricht (der maister) …	29	citation frame
Item …	25	list / recipe item

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

in dem libe	24	"in the body" anchor
sol man laussen [für] …	23	bleeding indication
(es) ist gut [für] …	14	benefit statement
zü welher zit …	10	"at what time"
Hüte dich (vor) …	8	apotropaic warning
Nim … [N] lot …	5	recipe imperative

I. Named-authority canon (citations across the whole text)

Avicenna 68 · Almansor 31 · Constantine(us) 17 · Galen (Galien/Galenus) 10 · Johannes 7 · Mesue 6 · Ypocras/Hippocrates 6 · Serapion 5 · Haly 4 · Averrois 3 · Aristotle 1. → Avicenna dominates; the workhorse sentence is **"Es spricht der maister Avicenna: das man sol[le] …"**

J. Rubricated paragraph-initials (the large coloured capitals that open paragraphs)

E 14 · D 13 · M 5 · W 5 · V 4 · A 3 · I 2 · then S J G Z R (1 each). → Paragraphs overwhelmingly open with **E** (*Es spricht / Es ist*) or **D** (*Das / Der / Du / Die*).

K. The monthly verse template (German, first-person)

"[Month] bin ich genant …" — e.g. *Genner bin ich genant · Hornung bin ich genant, erkenne mich · Aprelle bin ich genant · Brachmonet bin ich genant.* The month speaks in the first person, then gives one to three rhymed couplets of seasonal counsel (eat/drink, keep warm, bleed or not).

L. Latin calendar grammar (175 feast entries)

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

Structure: **[Saint-name in the genitive] + [office/title in the genitive]** — *Erhardi episcopi, Agnetis virginis, Vincentii martyris, Pauli apostoli*. Office/title words: virginis 33 · martyris 27 · episcopi 20 · pape 11 · Marie 10 · apostoli 9 · sancti 9 · octava 8 · confessoris 8 · domini 5 · abbatis 4 · presbyteri 1. Major (rubricated) feasts add *Domini/Marie* (Circumcisio, Epyphania, Purificatio) or *Octava …* for octaves.

M. Orthographic fingerprint (Alemannic/Swabian)

au for a (*laussen*=lassen, *haut*=hat) · ai for ei (*haisse*=heiß, *zaichen*=Zeichen) · ou (*ouch*=auch, *houpt*=Haupt) · umlauts ü/ö frequent (*blüt, lüte, für, mön*=Mond, *böse*) · wan=wenn/denn · nauch=nach · amen/am=einem/ein · ze/zü=zu · sol/solt=soll/sollst · woet/woerden=wird/werden · final -e retained.

N. A generative "recipe" — how to compose in this style

- **Register & rhythm.** Prescriptive medical-astrological prose; short clauses (~9 words) chained paratactically with **und** and the paragraph mark ¶. Aim for ~28 % of clauses to begin with *und*.
- **Sentence engine — rotate five moves:** (a) authority frame *"Es spricht der maister [Avicenna]: das man sol[le] …"*; (b) impersonal rule *"Man sol …"*; (c) 2nd-person *"Du solt …"*; (d) warning *"Hüte dich vor …"*; (e) causal tail *"wan …"*.
- **Bloodletting list-formula:** *"Die [N.] adern … die sol man laussen für [ailment]; und für [ailment]; und für …"* — pile up *und für* indications.
- **Recipe formula:** *"Item nim [drug] [N] lot; [drug] [N] lot; … und mache ein pulver; und iß es nüchtern …"*
- **Lexical anchors to return to:** *das blüt, in dem libe, die nature, die zaichen, der sonne / der mön, hize / kelti, böse / gut.*

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

- **Paragraphs** open with a rubricated **E** or **D**; cite **Avicenna** first, then Almansor / Galen / Constantine.
- **Calendar lines:** *"[Saint, genitive] [office, genitive]"*; **verses:** *"[Month] bin ich genant …"* + rhymed seasonal couplet.
- **Spelling:** apply the Alemannic substitutions in §M throughout.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

The Book's History

This little parchment book has passed through many hands in its 580 years, and it carries the record of that journey on its own leaves.

It was **written and illuminated in 1443** by **Heinrich Stegmüller of Wiesensteig**, who signs the colophon on f. 72r and calls himself there the *informator puerorum* — the schoolmaster of the boys — at **Buchau**, the free imperial abbey-town on the Federsee in the diocese of Constance. He finished it, he says, on the very day of St Prisca the Virgin, 18 January 1443.

By the early sixteenth century the book had become the memorial register of the noble house of **von Gundelfingen**, whose fortunes were bound to Buchau: a Gundelfingen daughter, **Barbara**, was abbess of Buchau (d. 1523). Three later hands filled the end-leaves (f. 73r–74r) with a family genealogy and a run of obituaries dated 1514–1523, among them **Katharina, countess of Werdenberg, born Freiin von Gundelfingen**, who signs her genealogy with a monogram, a line of cipher-letters, and the motto *Mein Hoffnung zu Gott* (“My hope is in God”).

The foot of f. 74r bears the stamp of the **Fürstlich-Fürstenbergische Hofbibliothek** at **Donaueschingen**, where the book rested for centuries in the Fürstenberg court library. From there it passed into the **Lawrence J. Schoenberg Collection at the University of Pennsylvania**, where it is today catalogued as **LJS 463** and placed, by its owners, in the public domain.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

Glossary

- **Iatromathematics** (*Iatromathematik*) — “medical astrology”: the doctrine that sun, moon and planets govern the right times for medicine, bloodletting and daily life.
- **Melothesia** — the mapping of the twelve zodiac signs onto the parts of the body, from Aries (head) down to Pisces (feet).
- **Homo signorum / Zodiac-Man** — the diagram (f. 54v) of a human figure with each body-part marked by its ruling sign.
- **The four complexions** — the temperaments of the four humours: **sanguine** (blood, warm-moist), **choleric** (yellow bile, warm-dry), **phlegmatic** (phlegm, cold-moist), **melancholic** (black bile, cold-dry).
- **Aderlass** (*laussen*, *minutio*) — bloodletting; the text fixes which days and veins are safe or dangerous by the sign the moon stands in.
- **The four quarters** — *Orient* (East), *Occident* (West), *Mittentag* (South) and *Septemtrio* (North); each sign is tied to one quarter.
- **Golden number** (*guldin zal*) — the year’s place in the 19-year lunar cycle, used to find the new moons.
- **Dominical letter** (*Sonntagsbuchstabe*) — the letter A–G marking which days fall on Sunday in a given year.
- **KL** (*Kalendae*) — the heading that opens each month of the calendar (“KL Januarius…”).
- **Egyptian / unlucky days** (*dies Aegyptiaci*) — days marked dangerous for medicine, travel or new undertakings.
- **Siechtage** — illnesses; the ailments a sign is said to govern.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

- **Roundel** — the small painted medallion on each calendar leaf, showing the month’s zodiac sign or its labour.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

Index of Persons & Places

- **Buchau** — free imperial abbey-town on the Federsee, diocese of Constance; where the book was written (1443) and where the von Gundelfingen family held the abbacy.
- **Constance, diocese of** — the see for which the calendar’s feasts are proper.
- **Donaueschingen** — seat of the Fürstenberg court library, whose stamp is on f. 74r.
- **Federsee** — the lake beside Buchau.
- **Gundelfingen, von** — noble family, later owners of the book. Named in the end-leaves: **Schwickhart**, Freiherr zu Gundelfingen; his wife **Elsbeth von Montfort**; **Barbara**, abbess of Buchau (d. 1523); **Katharina, countess of Werdenberg**; **Stephan** and **Eberhart** von Gundelfingen.
- **Kirchberg** — comital family; a countess of Kirchberg appears in the genealogy and in the obituary of **Appolonia** (d. 1517).
- **Montfort** — comital house; **Elsbeth von Montfort** married into the Gundelfingen line.
- **Schoenberg Collection** — the Lawrence J. Schoenberg Collection, University of Pennsylvania; present home of the book (LJS 463).
- **Stegmüller, Heinrich, of Wiesensteig** — priest-schoolmaster (*informator puerorum*) at Buchau; scribe, author and illuminator of the book, 1443.
- **Werdenberg** — comital house; **Katharina, countess of Werdenberg** wrote the genealogy on f. 73.
- **Wiesensteig** — Heinrich Stegmüller’s home town, in the Fils valley of Swabia.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

The Monthly Authorities

Each month’s health-regimen is spoken by a famous medical authority. In the German *Regimen sanitatis* / *Monatsregeln* tradition these attributions are largely **conventional** — a topos of the genre — and rarely mark a verbatim excerpt; the same counsel migrates between names from one manuscript to the next. With that caution, the authorities named here are:

- **Almansor** (January) — the aphoristic tradition attached to al-Rāzī’s *Liber ad Almansorem* (the “Almansor” aphorisms).
- **Ypocras / Hippocrates** (February) — the pseudo-Hippocratic dietetic and regimen tradition.
- **Galienus / Galen** (March) — Galenic dietetics: the humoral rule of the season.
- **Johannes** (April) — most probably Johannitius (Ḥunayn ibn Isḥāq), whose *Isagoge* opens the medieval medical curriculum; possibly a *Johannes*-regimen.
- **Avicenna** (May) — Ibn Sīnā, the dietetic books of the *Canon of Medicine*.
- **Averroes** (June) — Ibn Rushd, the *Colliget* (*Kitāb al-Kulliyyāt*).
- *(July)* — given anonymously (“as the master says”).
- **[Benera/Senera?]** (August) — unidentified, and **not** Galen (see the Editorial Note at f. 12r).
- **Serapion** (September) — Ibn Sarābiyūn, or the pseudo-Serapion of the Latin herbal tradition.
- **Constantine [the African]** (October) — the Salerno translator; the *Pantegni* and its dietetic matter.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

- **Mesue** (November) — the pseudo-Mesue of the *Grabadin*, the standard medieval pharmacopoeia.
- **Plato** (December) — a conventional ancient authority; no specific Platonic source underlies the counsel.

The point for a reader is that this is **school medicine made practical**: the great names of the Arabic–Latin canon, reduced to a month-by-month rule of diet, bathing and bloodletting for a lay household.

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

Index of Feasts

The saints' feasts of the calendar (diocese of Constance), by name. Dates give day and month.

Afra, martyr	7 Aug	Lucy, virgin · Odilia, virgin · Jodocus	13 Dec
Agapitus, martyr	18 Aug	Luke the Evangelist	18 Oct
Agatha, virgin	5 Feb	Magnus, confessor	6 Sep
Agnes, virgin	21 Jan	Marcellus, bishop	2 Jun
Alban, martyr	22 Jun	Marcellus, pope	16 Jan
Albinus	1 Mar	Margaret, virgin	15 Jul
Alexius, confessor	17 Jul	Mark & Marcellian, martyr	18 Jun
All Saints	1 Nov	Mark the Evangelist	25 Apr
All Souls	2 Nov	Mark, pope	7 Oct
Ambrose, bishop	4 Apr	Martha, virgin	29 Jul
Ananias & Azarias	16 Dec	Martin, bishop	11 Nov
Andrew, apostle	30 Nov	Mary Magdalene	22 Jul
Anne, Mother of Mary	26 Jul	Mary of Egypt	9 Apr
Annunciation of Mary	25 Mar	Matthew, apostle	21 Sep
Anthony, abbot	17 Jan	Matthias, apostle	24 Feb
Apollinaris, martyr	23 Jul	Maurice and companions	22 Sep

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going. see the Patreon page · The Common Library

Apollonia, virgin	9 Feb	Michael the archangel	29 Sep
Arnulf, confessor	18 Jul	Nativity of Mary	8 Sep
Assumption of Mary	15 Aug	Nativity of St John the Baptist	24 Jun
Barbara, virgin	4 Dec	Nicholas, bishop	6 Dec
Barnabas, apostle	11 Jun	Nicomedes, martyr	1 Jun
Bartholomew, apostle · Vigil	24 Aug	Nicomedes, martyr	15 Sep
Beheading of John the Baptist	29 Aug	Octave of Epiphany · Hilary, bishop	13 Jan
Benedict, abbot	21 Mar	Octave of Lawrence	17 Aug
Bernard, abbot	20 Aug	Octave of Mary	22 Aug
Blaise, bishop	3 Feb	Octave of St John	3 Jan
Boniface, bishop	5 Jun	Octave of St John	1 Jul
Brice, bishop	13 Nov	Octave of St Stephen	2 Jan
Brigid, virgin	1 Feb	Octave of the Apostles	6 Jul
Callixtus, pope	14 Oct	Octave of the Holy Innocents	4 Jan
Catherine, virgin	25 Nov	Oswald, king	5 Aug
Cecilia, virgin	22 Nov	Othmar, abbot	16 Nov
Chains of St Peter	1 Aug	Pantaleon, martyr	30 Jul
Chair of St Peter	22 Feb	Paul the First Hermit	10 Jan
Christina, virgin · Vigil	24 Jul	Pelagius, bishop · Augustine, bishop	27 Aug

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

Chrysogonus, martyr	24 Nov
Circumcision of the Lord	1 Jan
Clare, virgin	12 Aug
Clement, pope	23 Nov
Commemoration of St Paul	30 Jun
Conception of Mary	8 Dec
Conrad, bishop	26 Nov
Conversion of St Paul	25 Jan
Cosmas & Damian, martyr	27 Sep
Crispin & Crispinian	25 Oct
Cyriacus and companions	8 Aug
Cyriacus, martyr	16 Mar
Damasus, bishop	11 Dec
David, king	30 Dec
Day of … / Vigil	23 Jun
Dorothy, virgin	6 Feb
Eligius	1 Dec
Elizabeth, widow	17/19 Nov
Perpetua & Felicitas, virgin	7 Mar
Peter & Paul, apostles	29 Jun
Philip & James · Walburga, virgin	1 May
Praxedis, virgin	21 Jul
Presentation of Mary	21 Nov
Primus & Felician	9 Jun
Prisca, virgin	18 Jan
Pudentiana, virgin	19 May
Purification of Mary	2 Feb
Remigius, bishop	1 Oct
Resurrection of the Lord	27 Mar
Rufus, martyr	26 Aug
Saturninus · Vigil	29 Nov
Scholastica, virgin	10 Feb
Servatii, bishop	12/13 May
Severinus	23 Oct
Simon & Jude, apostles	28 Oct
Sixtus, pope	6 Aug

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

Epiphany of the Lord	6 Jan	Sophia, virgin	15 May
Erasmus, bishop	3 Jun	Stephen, pope	2 Aug
Erhard, bishop	8 Jan	Stephen, protomartyr	26 Dec
Euphemia, virgin	16 Sep	Sylvester, pope	31 Dec
Eustace, confessor	2 Apr	the Division of the Apostles	15 Jul
Fabian & Sebastian	20 Jan	the Eleven Thousand Virgins	21 Oct
Faith, virgin	6 Oct	the Exaltation of the Holy Cross	14 Sep
Felix & Adauctus, martyr	30 Aug	the Finding of the Holy Cross	3 May
Felix, pope	31 Jul	the Holy Innocents	28 Dec
Felix, priest	14 Jan	the Nativity of the Lord	25 Dec
Finding of St Stephen	3 Aug	the Seven Brothers	10 Jul
Fortunatus, bishop	26/27 Feb	the Seven Sleepers	27 Jun
Francis, confessor	4 Oct	Theodore, martyr · Martin, pope	9/10 Nov
Gall, confessor	16 Oct	Thomas, apostle	21 Dec
George, soldier	23 Apr	Thomas, martyr	29 Dec
Gertrude, virgin	17 Mar	Tiburtius & Valerian	14 Apr
Gervase & Protase, martyr	19 Jun	Tiburtius, martyr	11 Aug
Gordian & Epimachus	10 May	Timothy, apostle	24 Jan

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library

Gorgonius · the Dedication of the Greater Church	9 Sep	Ulrich, bishop	4 Jul
Gotthard, bishop	4 May	Urban, pope	25 May
Gregory, pope	12 Mar	Valentine, martyr	14 Feb
Henry, king	13 Jul	Valerius, bishop	29 Jan
Hippolytus, martyr · Vigil	13 Aug	Verena, virgin · Giles	1 Sep
James, apostle · Christopher, martyr	25 Jul	Victor, martyr	20 Mar
Jerome, priest	30 Sep	Vigil	28 Jun
John & Paul, martyr	26 Jun	Vigil	9 Aug
John before the Latin Gate	6 May	Vigil	20 Sep
John Chrysostom	27 Jan	Vigil	27 Oct
John, Apostle & Evangelist	27 Dec	Vigil	20 Dec
Juliana, virgin	16 Feb	Vigil of the Lord	24 Dec
Kilian and companions	8 Jul	Vincent, martyr	22 Jan
Lambert, martyr	17 Sep	Vitalis, martyr	28 Apr
Lawrence, martyr	10 Aug	Vitus, Modestus & Crescentia	15 Jun
Lazarus, bishop	17 Dec	… Constanciensis	11 Sep
Leonard, confessor	6 Nov		

This is a free copy — not for sale · made by Pavel Mamontov & Claude, for free use to help keep work like this going, see the Patreon page · The Common Library